

Manual for Basic

FOMA[®] D900i '04.5



DoCoMo W-CDMA System

Thank you for selecting the FOMA D900i.

- Read this manual “Basic” and the separate manual “Application” carefully before using your FOMA D900i and consult it while you are using the terminal so that you are able to use it correctly and effectively.
- Your FOMA D900i is a valuable asset. Handle it with care and it will be your trusted partner for years to come.

Before using your FOMA terminal

- The FOMA terminal is cordless so you may not be able to use it in certain locations where signals cannot penetrate, such as in tunnels, while underground, in some buildings or outdoors if the signal is weak or you are outside the service area. You also may not be able to use your FOMA terminal on the upper floors of some high-rise building, even though there is nothing around you that interferes with the signal. Please note that your call may be disconnected even when the signal is strong (when the signal strength indication shows three bars) and you are not moving.
- When using the FOMA terminal in public, busy or quiet places, be careful not to disturb others.
- Since the FOMA terminal relies on radio transmission, it is theoretically possible for third parties to intercept a call; however, because the W-CDMA system automatically employs a secrecy function for all calls, a third party will pick up nothing but signal noise.
- Since the FOMA terminal operates by the wireless transmission of voices converted to digital signals, if you are in a location where the signal is weak, the original voice may not be accurately reproduced from the received digital signal, therefore, the voice you hear may differ from the original sound of the speaker's voice.
- DoCoMo asks that you keep a separate record (e.g. written copy) of all information you store in your FOMA terminal. DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any loss that occurs should the contents of the FOMA terminal's memory be lost or altered.
- The FOMA terminal can be used only via the FOMA network provided by DoCoMo.
- The user hereby agrees that the user shall be solely responsible for the result of the use of SSL. Neither DoCoMo nor the certifier as listed herein makes any representation and warranty as for the security in the use of SSL. In the event that the user shall sustain damage or loss due to the use of SSL, neither DoCoMo nor the certifier shall be responsible for any such damage or loss.
Certifier: VeriSign Japan K. K. Baltimore Technologies Japan Co., Ltd.

Be sure to carefully read this manual before using your FOMA terminal and FOMA Card. Also be sure to carefully read the instruction manuals supplied with the battery and adapter (and charger) before use.

If you have any questions regarding the information contained in this manual, contact one of the numbers below.

• DoCoMo Group

For inquiries (in English)



0120-005-250 (toll free)

*Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs

For inquiries (in Japanese only)

No prefix 151 (toll free)

*Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSs



0120-800-000 (toll free)

*Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs

- Please confirm the phone number before you dial.

In this manual for the FOMA D900i, the FOMA D900i is referred to as the “FOMA terminal”.


- The display shown on the cover of this manual was inserted afterward.

Copyrights and Trademarks

Copyright and trademarks

Avoid unauthorized copying, alteration or editing of products videotaped or recorded using FOMA terminals and i-mode sites (programs) or Internet web pages because such activities are prohibited by copyright law except when such activities are for personal use. In addition, using or modifying photographs (portraits) or names without authorization infringes on the owner's portrait rights. Be careful not to infringe on other's copyrights or portrait rights when opening, viewing, or downloading videotaped or recorded products on Internet web pages. Furthermore, note that videotaping or recording of certain demonstrations, shows or exhibits may be prohibited, even when the intent is to use the videotaped or recorded content for personal use only.

Trademarks and registered trademarks

- Company names and trade names used in this manual are the trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies.
- The FOMA D900i incorporates NetFront v3.0 for FOMA to support its internet connection and browsing functions. NetFront v3.0 is a product of ACCESS Co., Ltd. (Copyright © 1996-2004 ACCESS Co., Ltd.) NetFront and **NetFront** are trademarks and registered trademarks of ACCESS Co., Ltd. in Japan and other countries. The FOMA D900i software contains modules developed by the Independent JPEG Group.
- The FOMA D900i incorporates ATOK of JUSTSYSTEM Corporation to support its Japanese input function. ATOK and 推測変換 (predictive conversion) are registered trademarks of JUSTSYSTEM Corporation. Copyright © 2003 JUSTSYSTEM Corporation.
- Powered By Mascot Capsule®/Micro3D Edition™
Mascot Capsule® is a registered trademark of HI Corporation.
- Microsoft® and Windows® are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.
- Java and Java-related products are trademarks and registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- Contains Macromedia® Flash™ Player technology by Macromedia, Inc., Copyright © 1995-2004 Macromedia, Inc. All rights reserved.
Macromedia, Flash and Macromedia Flash are trademarks or registered trademarks of Macromedia, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- Memory Stick, *Memory Stick Duo*, , **MEMORY STICK DUO** and **MEMORY STICK PRO DUO** are trademarks of Sony Corporation.
- QR code is a registered trademark of Denso Wave Inc.
- FOMA, i-mode, i- ppli, i- ppli search, i-melody, i-anime, i- ppli DX, i-motion, i-motion mail, i-area, and the Deco-mail, Chaku-motion, Chara-den, QUICKCAST, FirstPass/ファーストパス, mopera/モペラ, WORLD CALL, Multiaccess, Dual Network and the FOMA logo, i-mode logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DoCoMo, Inc.
- Multitask is a trademarks of NEC Corporation.
- チョコボ is a trademark of Square Enix Co., Ltd.
Copyright ©2004 SQUARE ENIX CO., LTD. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.
- In addition to the above, company names and trade names used in this manual are the trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies.
- Unauthorized use of MPEG-4 video utilized in the video and i-motion in this product is prohibited in accordance with the patent law except for personal use.
For uses on a commercial basis, contact MPEG LA, LLC, Inc. in the U.S.A.

Under the license from QUALCOMM Incorporated in accordance with one or more patents shown below that are registered in the U.S.A or other countries.

4,901,307	5,600,754	5,267,261	5,506,865	5,710,784
5,504,773	5,416,797	5,568,483	5,228,054	5,778,338
5,109,390	5,490,165	5,414,796	5,544,196	
5,535,239	5,101,501	5,659,569	5,337,338	
5,267,262	5,511,073	5,056,109	5,657,420	

Structure of the Manual

The manual for FOMA D900i consists of 2 books: “Basic” manual and “Application” manual.

“Basic” (this manual)

- Basic descriptions such as the FOMA terminal components, functions and charging the battery.
- Basic operating procedure such as making/receiving a call or videophone call and entering characters.
- Setting the functions
- The remedies for when something is wrong and After-Sales Services

“Application”

- Getting information on the FOMA terminal by using i-mode, and using i- ppli.
- Mail functions
- Shooting procedure for the still images and video clips with built-in camera, operating procedure for images, video/i-motion clips or melodies which are stored in the FOMA terminal.
- Operating procedure for infrared communication and *Memory Stick Duo*
- Data communications on the FOMA terminal

How to Use This Manual

Organization of operation descriptions

Function name

Title

Operation procedure
Describes the steps in a procedure.

Column
Contains information on convenient features.

Note
Provides more detailed information regarding a function.

Manner Mode
[Default] Turned off

Turning All Phone Sounds Off

In order not to disturb people around you in places where silence is required, you can set the FOMA terminal to turn off all sound. While in the Manner Mode, the terminal vibrates to let you know when a call is received.

- When Manner Mode is set simultaneously with Drive Mode, Drive Mode takes precedence (appears).

1 In standby or during a call, press and hold down .

Manner Mode is set.

- Alternatively, you can press and hold down to set Manner Mode.

Appears when Manner Mode is on.
The icon also appears on the inspiration window

When Manner Mode is set

- Ringtones, Keypad Sounds, warning sounds and all other sounds generated by the FOMA terminal are silenced. However, you cannot eliminate the shutter sound and Auto Timer sounds when shooting still images and video clips. You cannot adjust the sound volume, either.
- When there is an incoming call or mail is received, flashes and the FOMA terminal vibrates.
- When an alarm time arrives, the alarm does not sound and instead the FOMA terminal vibrates.
- When a specified schedule time arrives for which the sound or vibrator has been set, the alarm does not sound and instead the FOMA terminal vibrates.
- When the FOMA terminal vibrates, it follows the pattern set for each sound in Vibrator (see p.121).
- The Manner Mode items can be changed by setting Manner Mode Selection. When Manner Mode Selection is turned on, the FOMA terminal operates in accordance with the specified Manner Mode Selection setting (see p.119).
- Even when Manner Mode has been set, the FOMA terminal does not vibrate in the following cases.
 - Flash movie sound effects are played (see "Application" p.27).
 - Playing back video/motion contents (the FOMA terminal vibrates when there is an incoming call in case Chaku-motion is set)

Canceling Manner Mode

1 In standby or during a call, press and hold down .

Manner Mode is canceled.

- Alternatively, you can press and hold down in standby to cancel Manner Mode.

Note

- When you recharge the FOMA terminal using the desktop holder with the power turned on, be sure to cancel Manner Mode. Failure to do so could cause the FOMA terminal to vibrate out of the holder when a call is received.
- Note that when your FOMA terminal is placed on a table or other hard surface and Manner Mode is set, the vibrations generated by an incoming call could cause the FOMA terminal to fall to the floor.

118

Default setting or setting when acquiring applications

Overview of function and information you need to keep in mind

Tip
Provides additional information on the operation.

Page reference*

* This manual describes the page reference as shown below:
 (see p.20)Detailed description is in "Basic" manual (this manual) p.20.
 (see "Application" p.20)Detailed description is in "Application" manual p.20.

Menu descriptions

This manual describes the selection of Menus and submenus as shown below:

Format	Meaning
Select "でんわ" "着信履歴" from Menu.	Select "でんわ" from Main Menu and then select "着信履歴" from the branch menu.

Contents

Before using your FOMA terminal	Inside front cover
Copyrights and Trademarks	1
Structure of the Manual	2
How to Use This Manual	3
Contents	4
Features of the FOMA D900i	8
SAFETY PRECAUTIONS –Always follow these directions–	10
Notes for Overall Handling	20
Included Item Instructions	22

Introduction

• FOMA D900i Components and Functions	24
• Viewing the Display	28
• Selecting Menus	31

Checks Before Use

• Using a FOMA Card	34
• Attaching and Removing the Battery	38
• Recharging	39
• Turning the Power On/Off	[Power On/Off] 42
• Checking Battery Level	[Battery Level] 43
• Confirming Your Own Phone Number	[Own Number] 44
• Setting the Date and Time	[Set Clock] 45

Basic Operations

Making/Receiving Calls

• Making a Call	48
• Redialing a Previously Dialed Phone Number	[Redial] 50
• Activating or Deactivating Your Caller ID before Making a Call	[186/184] 52
• Quickly Sending Touch Tones	[Pause Function] 53
• Making an International Call	[WORLD CALL] 54
• Receiving a Call	56
• Using Call History	[Call History] 58
• Adjusting the Sound Volume of the Other Party During a Call	[Earpiece Volume] 60
• Adjusting the Ring Volume While the Terminal is Ringing	[Ring Volume] 61

Setting When You Cannot Answer Calls

• Putting a Call on Hold When You Cannot Answer It Immediately	[Answer Hold] 62
• Disabling to Receive a Call While Driving a Car	[Drive Mode] 62
• Checking Missed Call	[Missed Call] 64
• Recording the Caller's Message When You Cannot Answer a Call	[Record Message] 65
• Recording a Caller's Message When You Cannot Answer an Incoming Call	[Quick Record Message] 69
• Playing Back/Deleting Record Messages or Voice Memos	70

Making/Receiving Videophone Calls

• About Videophones	72
• Making a Videophone Call	73
• Receiving a Videophone Call	75
• Useful Functions Available during Videophone Calls	78
• Changing the Videophone Call Setting	86

Using Phonebook

- Phonebooks Usable for the FOMA Terminals 92
- Saving Entries in the FOMA Built-in Phonebook[Phonebook Entry] 94
- Saving Entries in the FOMA Card Phonebook[Save FOMA Card Phonebook Entry] 99
- Changing a Group Name[Set Group] 101
- Making a Call Using Phonebook 106
- Confirming the Saved Contents of Phonebook Entries 111
- Checking Phonebook Storage Status[Check Storage Status] 111
- Editing Phonebook Entries 112
- Deleting Phonebook Entries 113
- Protecting Confidential Phonebook Entries[Secret Search] 114
- Making a Call Using Simplified Keypresses[Two-press Dialing] 115
- Saving Phonebook Entries to the FOMA Card 116

Setting Manner Mode

- Turning All Phone Sounds Off[Manner Mode] 118
- Customizing Manner Mode[Manner Mode Selection] 119
- Using the Vibrator to Announce Incoming Calls and Alarms[Vibrator] 121

Advanced Operations

Using Phone Features

- Setting No Ringtone from a Party Not Saved in Phonebook[Set Mute Ring Time] 124
- Accepting Calls Only from Specified Phone Numbers[Accept Calls] 125
- Rejecting Calls from Specified Phone Numbers[Reject Calls] 126
- Rejecting Calls from Parties Not Saved in Phonebook[Reject Unstored Number] 127
- Rejecting Calls from Anonymous Callers[Caller ID-based Call Block] 128
- Registering a Number to Be Added to the Beginning of a Phone Number[Set Prefix] 129
- Making a Call by Specifying a Subaddress[Set Subaddress] 129
- Reducing Background Noise for Clearer Sound[Noise Reduction] 130
- Setting Alarm Sound of Call Recovery[Set Call Recovery Alarm] 130
- Informing of Poor Reception with an Alarm Sound[Quality Alarm] 131
- Answering a Call by Pressing Numeric Keys[Set Any Key Answer] 131
- Setting a Hold Tone[Set Hold Tone] 132
- Ending a Call/Putting a Call on Hold by Closing the FOMA Terminal[Set Close Operation] 133
- Checking and Resetting Call Time and Communication Time 135

Setting Sounds

- Adjusting the Sound Volume Such as Ringtone[Adjust Volume] 136
- Changing FOMA Terminal Ringtones[Set Sound] 138
- Turning Off Keypad Sound[Keypad Sound] 143
- Turning On Charging Sound[Charging Sound] 143

Customizing Display and Key Settings

- Customizing the Standby Screen[Set Standby Screen] 144
- Displaying the Image Set for Phonebook during an Incoming Call[Set Photo Call] 148
- Setting the Inspiration Window[Set Inspiration Window] 149
- Setting the Start Screen Displayed When You Turned Power On[Wake-up Display] 152
- Setting a Visual Partner[Set Partner] 153
- Adjusting Display Contrast[Adjust Contrast] 156
- Setting the Display Light and Key Light[Set Display Light] 157
- Displaying More Natural Color[Natural Color Matrix] 159
- Setting the Size of Image to Be Displayed[Set Display size] 159
- Displaying the Prompt after the End of Operation[Set Assist Partner] 160

Restricting Mobile Phone Operations

- About ID Codes 161
- Changing the Terminal ID Number[Change Terminal ID] 162
- Setting the PIN Codes 162
- Entering the PIN1 Code 164
- Canceling PIN Lock 165
- About the Lock Functions 166
- Preventing Others from Using the FOMA Terminal[All Lock] 167
- Setting PIM Lock[PIM Lock] 168
- Setting Keydial Lock[Set Restrictions] 169
- Setting to Not Display Redial Data/Call History[Set Log Display] 170
- Using Self Mode[Self Mode] 171
- Protecting Your Terminal Against Accidental Key Presses[Key Guard] 172

Using the Timer and Schedule Functions

- Automatically Turning On Your FOMA Terminal[Auto Power On] 173
- Automatically Turning Off Your FOMA Terminal[Auto Power Off] 174
- Setting the Alarm to Sound at a Specific Time[Alarm Time] 174
- Saving Schedule Entries[Schedule Entry] 177

Using Other Functions

- Saving Your Own Name, Mail address and Others[Own Number] 181
- Executing Frequently Used Functions Quickly[Jump Menu] 182
- Recording the Other Party's Voice or Your Voice[In-call/Standby Voice Memo] 183
- Setting the Function to Execute When Pressing Side Key C[Select Side Keys Act] 185
- Checking the Status of Settings[Confirm Settings] 185
- Restoring Phone Settings to the Defaults[Reset Settings] 185
- Setting the Carrier to Use[Set PLMN] 188
- Setting the Ringtone to Sound Only from the Earphone (optional)[Select Earphone/Speaker] 188
- Using a Switch-equipped Earphone/Microphone (optional)[Switch-equipped Earphone/Microphone] 189
- Answering a Call Automatically with the Switch-equipped Earphone/Microphone Connected (optional)[Set Auto Answer] 191
- If You Forget the Key Sequences[Help Function] 192
- Services Available from Your FOMA Terminal 193

Multiaccess/Multitask

- About Multiaccess 194
- About Multitask 197

Network Services

DoCoMo's Network Services

- Network Services That Can Be Used from a FOMA Terminal 202
- Using Voice Mail Service[Voice Mail Service] 203
- Using Call Forwarding Service[Call Forwarding Service] 208
- Using Call Waiting Service[Call Waiting Service] 213
- Using Nuisance Call Blocking Service[Nuisance Call Blocking Service] 216
- Notifying the Called Party of Your Phone Number[Caller ID Notification Service] 217
- Using Caller ID Display Request Service[Caller ID Display Request Service] 219
- Using Dual Network Service[Dual Network Service] 221
- Switching the Announcement Language between Japanese and English ...[English Announcement Service] 222
- Using Service Dial[Service Dial] 223
- Selecting How a Call during Talking is Handled[Second Call Handling] 224
- Setting Call Reception during Talking[Set Call Reception during Talking] 225
- Setting Remote Operation[Set Remote Operation] 226
- Registering and Using Services[Additional Service] 227

Character Entry

Character Entry

- Basic Character Entry Procedures 230
- Entering Characters in 5-press Method[5-press Method] 232
- Editing/Saving Common Phrases[Save Common Phrase] 244
- Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text[Copy Text] 246
- Entering Characters Using Character Map Codes[Use Character Map Code] 248
- Saving Frequently Used Words[Save New Word] 249
- Entering Characters in 2-press Method[2-press Method] 251
- Changing Font Size on the Character Entry Screen[Set Character Size] 252

Appendix

- Menu List 254
- Character Map Code List 256
- Character Assignment Table (5-press Method) 260
- Character Assignment Table (2-press Method) 261
- List of Symbols and Special Characters 262
- Common Phrase List 264
- Combination during Multiaccess 265
- Combination during Multitask 266
- Something Wrong? First Check for Problems 267
- Warranty and After Sales Service 270
- Updating the FOMA Terminal's Software[Software Update] 272
- Index 278
- Mobile phone etiquette Inside back cover

Features of the FOMA D900i

The FOMA is the name of a DoCoMo service based on the W-CDMA system approved as a world standard for third generation mobile systems (IMT-2000).

A good data communication environment (384 kbps)

You can enjoy packet communication at the speed as high as 384 kbps by connecting your FOMA terminal to the personal computer (PC). The FOMA terminal also supports 64K data communications.

Multiaccess and Multitask

Because of the FOMA's Multiaccess function, you can use voice calls and packet communications at the same time. This allows you to talk during an i-mode connection or send/receive mail while talking. The FOMA terminal also supports the Multitask function which allows you to run more than one applications at the same time (see p.194, 197).

Videophone

You can talk with the other party with both your image and their image on the screen (see p.72).

Built-in camera

The built-in mega-pixel camera allows you to take a image of others with your FOMA closed and take a image of yourself with your FOMA open. You can capture still images and video clips in several photography modes. You can use the captured still image for a mail attachment or as a Standby screen (see "Application" p.198). Effective number of pixels of the camera: about 1 mega pixels.
Maximum number of pixels: about 1.92 mega pixels.

Barcode reader

You can scan QR and JAN barcodes using the built-in camera to perform a variety of operations with scanned data, such as saving phonebook entries, saving images/melodies, and copying characters of text (see "Application" p.217).

Infrared communication

You can exchange Phonebook data, sent/received mail and images (see "Application" p.270). The FOMA also supports infrared remote control function (see p.279).

i-mode support

You can enjoy i-mode sites (programs), i- ppli applications, and fast internet connections with your FOMA terminal because it supports high-speed packet communication with up to 384 kbps download speed (see "Application" p.16).

Note: i-mode is a subscription-based pay service.

FOMA Card support

The FOMA Card contains the user information such as the phone number. This card also saves Phonebook data and Short Messages (SMS). Insert it in the FOMA terminal to use it (see p.34).

Chara-den support

During a videophone call, you can use an avatar instead of your self image and have it displayed on the other party's terminal A motion and expression can also be attached to the avatar by key operation (see p.78)

Ultra-fine & Big Screen for photographing and playing video clips

- The Ultra-fine mode enables you to capture or play smooth motion video (see "Application" p.207, 246).
- The Big Screen mode allows you to capture or play high-resolution video (QVGA 320 × 240 pixels) (see "Application" p.207, 246).

Memory Stick Duo, Memory Stick PRO Duo

You can copy and save sent/received mail, phonebook entries, images and melodies to *Memory Stick Duo* or *Memory Stick PRO Duo*. You can also use them to backup the FOMA data easily (see "Application" p.280).

Inspiration Window

You can use the Inspiration window to check the time with your FOMA closed. You can also check the Inspiration window for a call or mail when received (see p.30).

High-quality melody playback

- You can download melodies from sites and use them as ringtones (i-melody supported) (see "Application" p.44).
- The FOMA terminal also supports ringtones (ADPCM sounds) such as PCM generated, 48-note harmonic, voice and sound effects.

Up to 700 phone numbers and 700 mail addresses

One phonebook item can hold up to 3 phone numbers and 3 mail addresses (this varies, however, with storage conditions). Still images you captured with the built-in camera can also be saved (see p.92)

Chaku-motion support

You can select an i-motion as a ringtone and use a video clip and melody to announce an incoming call. You can also set the video clip taken with the FOMA terminal as a Chaku-motion.

Enhanced mail services

Two types of mail services are available: the Short Message Service (SMS) you can use without subscription and the i-mode mail service which also can be used as email over the Internet (see "Application" p.110).

Deco-mail support

This function allows you to send/receive i-mode mail with decorated text and inserted images (see "Application" p.123).

i- ppli support

You can use i- ppli applications to customize and enhance your FOMA terminal. Your FOMA terminal also supports the i- ppli DX Standby screen (see "Application" p.57).

Smooth text entry

- The FOMA terminal incorporates the ATOK input method system for efficient conversion of Kanji characters. The predictive conversion function allows easy entry (see p.230).
- You can enter pictographs and emoticons easily (see p.241).

Personalized setup

- You can personalize character size and font settings (see p.252).
- You can display an avatar when you make a call (see p.153).

i-motion and i-motion mail support

- This function allows you to download and save image and sound data from the i-motion site to your FOMA terminal and play them back (see "Application" p.97).
- You can send a video clip captured by the built-in camera or i-motion downloaded from an i-motion site as i-mode mail attachment (see "Application" p.131).

Enhanced site display functions




Sites can be expressed more impressively with Flash movies. Flash movie can be set for the Standby screen.

TV support







- The FOMA terminal can play back TV programs or video files by converting them with the accompanying PC video authoring tool. (see "Application" p.338).
- The FOMA terminal contains the TV (NTSC) output interface which enables you to display the still image and video clip captured by the built-in camera on the TV screen. (see "Application" p.228, 247).

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS –Always follow these directions–

- Read the following SAFETY PRECAUTIONS to ensure that the terminal is used correctly. Also, store this manual in a convenient location for future reference.
- It is essential that these precautions be observed to prevent injury to the user and third parties as well as damage to property.
- **The following symbols are used to indicate the degree of danger or damage that may result from failing to follow the specified precautions.**

 DANGER	Indicates an imminently hazardous situation, which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.
 WARNING	Indicates a potentially hazardous situation, which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.
 CAUTION	Indicates a potentially hazardous situation, which, if not avoided, may result in injury or property damage.

- **The following symbols are used to highlight instructions that are very important and that must be strictly followed.**

	This indicates the action is prohibited.		
	This indicates disassembly is prohibited.		This indicates the part must not be exposed to water.
	This indicates that handling with wet hands is prohibited.		
	This indicates an action that must be performed in accordance with the directions.		
	This indicates you must remove the plug from the power outlet.		

- **The SAFETY PRECAUTIONS are separated into 6 categories.**
- | | |
|---|------|
| Handling the FOMA terminal, battery and adapter (and charger) (general information) | P.11 |
| Handling the FOMA terminal | P.12 |
| Handling the battery | P.14 |
| Handling the adapter (and charger) | P.16 |
| Using the FOMA Cards | P.17 |
| Using the FOMA terminal in the vicinity of medical devices | P.19 |

DANGER



Use only DoCoMo-certified batteries, adapters (and chargers) with the FOMA terminal.

- Use of non-specified items could cause the battery or other devices to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.

AC adapter: D02

DC adapter: D01

Battery: D02

Desktop holder: D02

Rear cover: D02

Flat AV power cable:P01

For additional details about compatible products, check with your nearest NTT DoCoMo service center.

WARNING



Do not use in environments exposed to combustible or explosive materials.

- Using the equipment in locations exposed to flammable gases or liquids such as propane or gasoline could cause a fire or explosion.



Do not place the battery, FOMA terminal or adapter (and charger) in a microwave oven, pressure cooker or other cooking device.

- Doing so could cause the battery to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire, and could damage the circuitry of the FOMA terminal and adapter (and charger) or could cause the devices to overheat, emit smoke or catch fire.



Do not expose the components to strong shocks by dropping or throwing them.

- Doing so could cause the battery to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire, or could damage the equipment or cause a fire.



Do not use or place the components close to a fire, stove or other heating device.

- Doing so could cause to overheat, rupture or catch fire.



Carry out the following immediately should you detect smoke, strange smells or some other malfunction.

1. Remove the power plug from the power outlet or power socket.
2. Turn off the FOMA terminal.
3. Remove the battery from the FOMA terminal.

- In such a situation, continuing to use (charge) the equipment could cause a fire or other failure. Remove the battery and contact your nearest NTT DoCoMo service center.

CAUTION



Keep out of the reach of small children.

- Failure to do so could result in injury.

CAUTION



Do not use or leave the components in locations exposed to direct sunlight or other hot locations such as a car exposed to the hot sun.

- Doing so could cause the battery to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire, or could damage or deform the equipment.
- Part of the case may become very hot, causing burn injuries, etc.



When a child uses the FOMA terminal, first be sure an experienced adult teaches proper usage methods and techniques. Observe the child to determine that they are using the FOMA terminal correctly.

- Failure to do so could result in injury.



Do not place the components on an unstable or tilted surface.

- Doing so could cause the equipment to slide off, possibly causing personal injury or damaging the equipment.



Do not store in locations subject to high temperature and humidity or excessive dust.

- Doing so could damage the equipment.

Handling the FOMA terminal

WARNING



Turn off the FOMA terminal inside an aircraft, hospital or other location where use of mobile phones is prohibited.

- The FOMA terminal may interfere with the correct functioning of electronic equipments. If the auto power on function is used, cancel the setting and turn the power off. Observe any regulations posted in medical facilities.
- If you have done prohibition acts such as using the FOMA terminal inside an aircraft, you may be punished as stipulated by law.



Turn off the FOMA terminal in the vicinity of electronic equipment that relies on high-precision control or faint signals.

- The FOMA terminal may interfere with the correct functioning of such electronic equipment.
- Note: Examples of electronic equipment that require caution include hearing aids, implanted cardiac pacemakers, implanted defibrillators, other medical devices, fire alarms, automatic doors and other automatically controlled equipment. Users of such medical equipments should check with the electronic equipment or device manufacturer with respect to the effect of electromagnetic interference.



Do not place the FOMA terminal in a breast or inner pocket if you are carrying or using electrical medical equipment.

- The FOMA terminal could cause any medical equipment in its vicinity to malfunction.



People with weak hearts should take care with respect to setting the incoming vibrator and Ring Volume.


- The FOMA terminal may interfere hearts.




Do not disassemble or alter.

- Doing so could cause fire, injury, electric shock or damage to the equipment.


! WARNING

- 


Do not use the FOMA terminal while driving.

 - Use of the FOMA terminal in vehicles could cause unsafe driving conditions. Park the car in a safe place and then use the terminal.
 - If you have done prohibition acts such as using the FOMA terminal while driving, you may be punished as stipulated by law.
- 

Do not aim the infrared port at your eyes and attempt to transmit.

 - Eyes could be affected. Aiming at other infrared devices and transmitting could cause other devices to malfunction.
- 


Do not hold the FOMA terminal close to your ear during hands-free operation.

 - Doing so could cause the hearing loss.
- 


Do not aim the Compact light toward oncoming vehicles or other drivers.

 - The other driver could be temporarily blinded or momentarily startled, causing an accident.


! CAUTION

- 

If you hear thunder while using the FOMA terminal outdoors, immediately turn the power off and move to a safe location.


 - Use of the terminal in such a situation could expose you to lightning strikes or electric shock.
- 

Do not swing the FOMA terminal around by the strap.


 - Doing so could cause injury to yourself or a third party or damage the phone.
- 

Rarely, some FOMA terminal users may develop itching, skin irritation or eczema. If such a condition occurs, stop using the FOMA terminal immediately and seek medical attention.


 - Metal is used in the following components:

Parts where a material is used			Material
• Easy Selector Plus	• Mail key	• Task key	Chrome-plated
• Side key A	• Side key B	• Side key C	
• Periphery of Inspiration Window			Aluminum
- 

Do not expose the FOMA terminal to water.

 - The FOMA terminal may overheat, cause electric shock, damage or injury if exposed to water, pet urine or other liquids. Do not use the FOMA terminal in locations where it could be exposed to liquids.
- 

Do not allow water or other liquids, pieces of metal or other foreign material to enter into the FOMA Card slot of the FOMA terminal.

 - Doing so could cause fire, electric shock, or damage to the FOMA terminal.
- 

Use in certain makes of cars may affect onboard electronic equipment.

 - As use of the FOMA terminal while driving could cause unsafe driving conditions, do not use the FOMA terminal in such a case.

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS - Always follow these directions-

CAUTION



Do not bring magnetic cards, etc. near the FOMA terminal or leave between the two halves of the FOMA terminal and then attempt to fold it closed.

- Magnetic data stored on bank cards, credit cards, telephone cards, and floppy disks may be corrupted or lost.



Do not aim the Compact light at your eyes and attempt to transmit. When the Compact light is on, do not look at the lighting part directly.

- Your vision could be adversely affected.



Do not use the Compact light for purposes other than for use with the camera.

- The Compact light is turned off in about 3 minutes if no action is taken. In such a case, the surrounding environment could suddenly become dark, possibly inadvertently causing an accident.



Do not insert your finger or the strap in the antenna section when opening the FOMA terminal.

- Doing so could cause personal injury or damage the FOMA terminal.

Handling the battery

- Check the battery type indicated on the battery label.

Indication	Battery type
リチウムイオン	Lithium ion battery

DANGER



If electrolyte from the battery gets in your eyes, do not rub; instead, rinse immediately with copious amounts of clean water and seek medical attention.

- Doing so could cause the loss of vision.



Do not throw the battery into a fire.

- Doing so could cause the battery to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.



Do not attach metallic materials such as wire to the port. Do not carry or store the battery together with a necklace or other metallic items.

- Doing so could cause the battery to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.



Do not pierce the battery with nails, hammer on it or step on it.

- Doing so could cause the battery to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.



When you attach the battery to the FOMA terminal, never attempt to forcefully insert. The battery should slide in easily and fit correctly. Check the direction of the battery and try again.

- Doing so could cause the battery to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.



Do not use or place the battery close to a fire, stove or other heating device.

- Doing so could cause the battery to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.

DANGER



Do not expose the battery to water.

- The battery could overheat, cause electric shock or be damaged if exposed to water, pet urine or other liquids. Do not use the battery in locations where it could be exposed to liquids.



Do not disassemble or alter. Do not directly solder.

- Doing so could cause the battery to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.

WARNING



Should any electrolyte from the battery come into contact with your skin or clothing, immediately stop using the battery and rinse with clean water.

- Failure to do so could cause skin injuries.



Stop charging if it is not possible to fully charge the battery within the specified time.

- Doing so could cause the battery to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.



If you notice any unusual conditions such as strange odors, overheating, discoloration or deformation while using, charging or storing the battery, immediately detach it from the FOMA terminal and stop using it.

- Continued use under such conditions could cause the battery to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.



If the battery leaks or emits strange odors immediately stop using it, and always keep away from sources of fire.

- Failure to do so could cause the battery liquid to catch fire or could cause the battery itself to rupture.



Do not use or leave the battery in areas exposed to direct sunlight or other hot locations such as in a car left in the hot sun.

- Doing so could cause the battery to leak or overheat, or could lead to loss of performance or shorten battery life.

CAUTION



Do not dispose of the battery with other regular household waste.

- Failure to properly dispose of the battery in an environmentally sensitive manner could cause the battery to catch fire and could damage the environment. Use tape to cover the terminal of battery when it is no longer in use and take the battery to any NTT DoCoMo service center. Alternatively, you can also dispose of the battery in accordance with local regulations.

Handling the adapter (and charger)

WARNING



Use care to not short circuit the recharging terminal when the adapter is connected to a wall outlet or cigarette lighter socket. Do not touch the recharger terminal with your hands or fingers, or some other part of the body.

- Doing so could cause a fire, equipment failure, electric shock or other injury.



Do not touch the adapter (and charger) cord or wall outlet with wet hands.

- Doing so could cause electric shock.



Do not use the AC adapter and desktop holder in bathrooms or other potentially high humidity locations.

- Doing so could cause electric shock.



Do not expose the adapter (and charger) to water.

- The adapter may overheat, cause electric shock or be damaged if exposed to water, pet urine or other liquids. Do not use the adapter in locations where it could be exposed to liquids.



When the adapter (and charger) is not to be used for a prolonged period, disconnect the power plug from the wall outlet.

- Failure to do so could result in electric shock, fire, or equipment failure.



Never use the adapter (or charger) when it has a damaged power cord.

- Failure to do so could result in electric shock, smoke or fire.



If the adapter (and charger) is exposed to water or other liquid, immediately disconnect the power plug from the wall outlet or cigarette lighter socket.

- Failure to do so could result in electric shock, smoke or fire.



When connected to a wall outlet, make sure that the AC adapter does not come into contact with metallic straps or other metal objects and the plug is properly seated.

- Failure to do so could result in electric shock, short circuit, or fire.



Do not disassemble or alter the adapter (and charger).

- Doing so could result in electric shock, fire, or equipment failure.



Use the designated power source and correct voltage.

- Use of incorrect voltage could cause a fire or equipment failure. In addition to that, using the FOMA terminal overseas could cause an equipment failure.
AC adapter: 100V AC (Be sure to connect to only a domestic 100V AC outlet for home use)
DC adapter: 12V DC, 24V DC (for cars with a negative ground)



Use only the specified fuse for the DC adapter.

- Use of the incorrect fuse could cause a fire or equipment failure. Check the instruction manual for details of the correct fuse to use.

WARNING



The DC adapter is for use with negative ground cars. Never use them with positive ground cars.

- Doing so could cause the equipment to catch fire.



Be sure the power plug is free of dust.

- Failure to do so could cause the equipment to catch fire.



During charging, place the adapter (and charger) and desktop holder in a stable location. Do not cover or wrap the adapter (and charger) and desktop holder with a cloth or blanket, etc.

- Using the equipment under such conditions could cause the FOMA terminal to be detached from the holder, or could cause a heat buildup that leads to a fire or equipment failure.



If it is difficult to disconnect the power plug from the wall outlet, do not attempt to forcefully disconnect the unit.

- Doing so could damage the equipment or result in electric shock or accident.



Do not carry out using beyond the rating of a wall outlet or wiring accessories.

- Using in excess of rating such as plugging too many leads into a single socket could cause overheating or fire.

CAUTION



Disconnect the power plug before beginning any maintenance.

- Failure to do so could cause electric shock.



Do not yank on the adapter (and charger) cord or power cord when disconnecting the adapter (and charger) from the wall outlet.

- Doing so could damage the cord and could result in electric shock or fire.



Do not place heavy objects on the adapter (and charger) cord or power cord.

- Doing so could cause electric shock or fire.



Never attempt to charge the battery when it is wet.

- Doing so could cause the battery to overheat, rupture or catch fire.

Using the FOMA Card

WARNING



Do not place the FOMA Card in a microwave oven, pressure cooker or other heating device.

- Doing so could cause the card to melt, overheat, generate smoke, resulting in failure and loss of data.

CAUTION



Store the FOMA Card out of reach of small children.

- Failure to do so could result in injury.



Take care when removing the FOMA Card (IC section) to prevent injury to hand and fingers.



Do not expose the FOMA Card to the heat or throw it into a fire.

- Doing so could cause the card to melt, overheat, generate smoke, resulting in failure and loss of data.



Do not use or place the FOMA Card close to a fire, stove or other heating device.

- Doing so could cause the card to melt, overheat, generate smoke, resulting in failure and loss of data.



Do not to damage the IC.

- Doing so could cause the card to fail.



Do not touch the IC or short-circuit it.

- Doing so could cause data loss and failure.



Do not drop the FOMA Card or expose it to shock.

- Doing so could cause card failure.



Do not bend or place heavy objects on the FOMA Card.

- Doing so could cause the card to fail.



Do not expose the FOMA Card to water.

- Exposing the card to water, urine from pet and other liquids could cause the card to fail.



Do not disassemble or alter the FOMA Card.

- Doing so could cause data loss or damage.

CAUTION



Do not store the FOMA Card in a location exposed to direct sunlight, high temperature and high humidity.

- Doing so could cause card failure.



Do not store the FOMA Card in a dusty location.

- Doing so could cause card failure.



Use the FOMA Card only with devices designated by DoCoMo.

- Using the FOMA Card with other devices could lead to data loss or failure. Consult an NTT DoCoMo service center for details on what devices the FOMA Card can be used with.

Using the FOMA terminal in the vicinity of medical devices

The information given below conforms to the guidelines set forth by the Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference regarding the protection of electronic medical equipment from radio waves emitted by mobile phone units.

WARNING



Turn off the FOMA terminal on packed trains or in crowded places as someone with an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator may be nearby.

- The electromagnetic waves emitted by your phone could affect the function of an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator.



When inside a medical institution, always remember the following guidelines:

- Never take the FOMA terminal inside an operating room, intensive care unit (ICU) or coronary care unit (CCU).
- Always turn off the FOMA terminal in hospital wards.
- Even in the lobby and other areas, always turn off the FOMA terminal when electronic medical equipment is nearby.
- Follow the directives of the medical institution. There may be specific regulations as to items that are prohibited or use of which is restricted.
- If you are using the auto power on function, cancel the setting and turn off the power.



If you have an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator, keep your FOMA terminal at least 22 cm away from it.

- The electromagnetic waves emitted by your terminal could affect the function of an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator.



If you are using electronic medical equipment other than implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted defibrillators at your home or outside the confines of a medical institution, be sure to check with the manufacturer about possible adverse effects caused by electromagnetic interference.

- The electromagnetic waves emitted by your terminal could affect the function of an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator.

Notes for Overall Handling

General precautions

- Do not get the components wet.
The FOMA terminal, battery pack and adapter (and charger) are not waterproof. Avoid using the components in a bathroom or other high humidity areas or locations exposed to rain. If you carry the components, sweat could cause internal corrosion that leads to equipment failure. As a result of investigation, if component failure is found to be water-related, repair is not covered by the warranty and may not be able to be performed.
In such a case, should it be found to be possible to repair the unit, you will be billed for all repairs.
- Clean the components with a soft, dry cloth.
 - Clean the components using a soft, dry cloth (such as a lens cloth).
 - Using alcohol, thinner, benzene or detergents could cause printed text to fade or disappear or could cause the equipment to become discolored.
- Occasionally clean the terminals with a dry cotton swab.
Dirty terminals could cause intermittent contact that could interrupt the flow of power to the unit. Such a situation also causes insufficient charging. Use a dry cloth or cotton swab to clean the terminal.
- Do not place the components near an air conditioner vent.
Sudden changes in temperature could cause condensation, leading to corrosion inside the components and equipment failure.
- Do not place the FOMA terminal in locations where it could be exposed to excessive pressure.
Do not place it in a bag together with many other things or in your pocket when you sit down as this could exert pressure on the LCD or damage the internal boards, resulting in equipment failure. Damage arising from such causes is not covered by the warranty.
- Carefully read the instruction manuals supplied with the battery and adapter (and charger) before use.

FOMA terminal handling instructions

- Avoid extremely high or low temperatures.
Use in an environment with an ambient temperature of 5-35°C and relative humidity of 45-85%.
- If the FOMA terminal is used near a radios, televisions or general subscriber phone, it could affect such equipments. Use the terminal as far away from such equipments as possible.
- With regard to data stored in the FOMA terminal, keep it separately in a memo, etc. so as not to permanently lose important data.
NTT DoCoMo cannot be held responsible in any way for the loss of stored data.
- Do not put the FOMA terminal in your back pocket and sit on it. Avoid putting the terminal in the bottom of a bag, etc. where it is subject to excessive pressure.
Doing so could damage the equipment.
- Do not close the FOMA terminal with the strap caught between the folded halves of the device.
Doing so could damage the equipment and result in malfunction.
- Use the hand strap while holding the FOMA terminal.
Failure to do so could cause you to drop the terminal, causing equipment malfunction or failure.
- Usually, use the FOMA terminal with the earphone/microphone terminal cap, external device terminal cap, and the *Memory Stick Duo* inlet cover closed.
Failure to do so could allow water or other contaminants to get inside the unit, causing equipment failure.
- Do not aim the camera directly at the sun.
Elements may be discolored or baked.
- Do not push the numeric keys near the *Memory Stick Duo* slot strongly when you use your FOMA terminal without inserting *Memory Stick Duo*.
It may cause the difficulties of inserting or removing *Memory Stick Duo*. Also, it may cause equipment failure.
- It is normal for the FOMA terminal to become warm during using or recharging. You can continue to use it while warm.

Battery handling instructions

- The battery will gradually wear out.

Battery life also depends on how you use the battery; you know it is time to replace it when the usage time is very short even though you fully charge it. The specified battery can be purchased separately.

- Recharge the battery in locations where the ambient temperature is between 5°C and 35°C.
- When using for the first time or after a long period of non-use, be sure to fully charge the battery before use.
- The time of use provided by the battery depends on the ambient conditions and the condition of the battery itself.
- Do not dispose of the battery with other regular household waste.
Tape the terminals of batteries that are no longer needed and take them to an NTT DoCoMo service center. Alternately, you can also dispose of the battery in accordance with local regulations.
- Recharge the battery pack once every 6 months even when you do not use the battery for a long time.
Failure to fully charge the battery periodically could negatively impact battery performance and service life.

FOMA Card handling instructions

- Do not expose the IC section of the card to more force than is necessary during removal and insertion.
- The FOMA Card becomes warm during use. This is normal and not a cause for concern.
- Note that any card failures resulting from inserting the FOMA Card in an IC card reader/writer not designated by NTT DoCoMo are the responsibility of the customer.
- Make sure that the IC is kept clean.
- Use a clean dry cloth for cleaning the terminal.
- It is recommended that users maintain data stored on the FOMA Card in some other form.
In no event shall NTT DoCoMo be liable for loss of data stored on the FOMA Card.
- Any FOMA Cards that are no longer needed should be returned to an NTT DoCoMo service center for proper disposal.
- Avoid extremely high or low temperature.

Adapter (and charger) handling instructions

- Recharge the battery in a location where the ambient temperature is between 5°C and 35°C. Do not recharge in the following locations:
 - Locations that are subject to high humidity, dust or excessive vibration
 - Near general subscriber phones, TVs or radios
- It is normal for the adapter (and charger) to become warm during recharging. You can continue charging with a warm adapter.
- When the battery is recharged using the DC adapter, always keep the car engine running.
Failure to do so could cause the car battery to run down more quickly than normal.
- When an outlet with falling prevention mechanism is used, check the instruction manual for the outlet before use.

Memory Stick Duo handling instructions

- Data can be corrupted under certain situations, including when you detach *Memory Stick Duo*, turn the power off or subject the unit to strong impacts.
Do not perform any of these actions when:
 - Copying data
 - Overwriting data
 - Processing data
 - Deleting data
 - Backing up data
 - Checking the Memory Stick
 - Formatting

[Shooting and sending images]

When you shoot pictures or send those images as mail attachments, pay careful attention to not infringe intellectual property rights such as copyrights and other rights such as the right of portrait and right to privacy. If you infringe other's rights or shoot or send images as mail attachments that cause a nuisance or are against public order or morality, you may be punished as stipulated by law or be the subject of legal action seeking compensation.

If you should use the FOMA terminal to make a public nuisance, you might be punished under the laws and bylaws such as Japan's nuisance prevention ordinance.

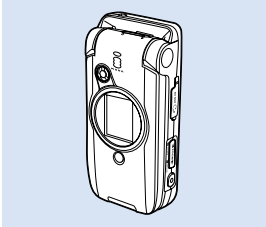


Always consider the privacy of others when you use the camera of your mobile phone or transfer the shot image to another person.

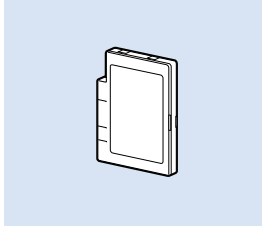
Included Item Instructions

Shown here are the standard accessories supplied with your FOMA terminal. Make sure that all items are included and function correctly.

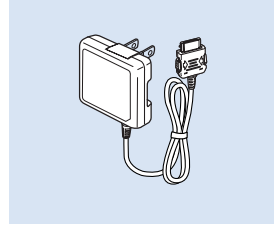
FOMA D900i



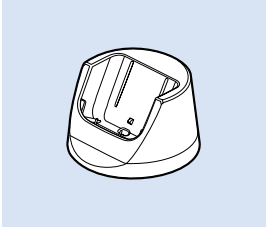
Battery



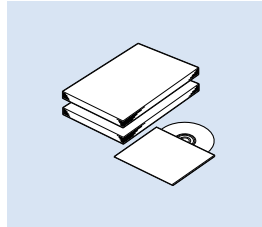
AC adapter



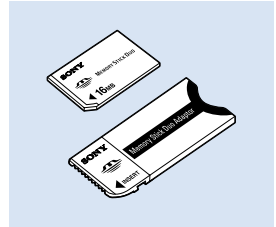
Desktop holder



Instruction manuals
"Basic" (this book)
"Application"
CD-ROM for FOMA D900i



Memory Stick Duo
Memory Stick Duo adapter



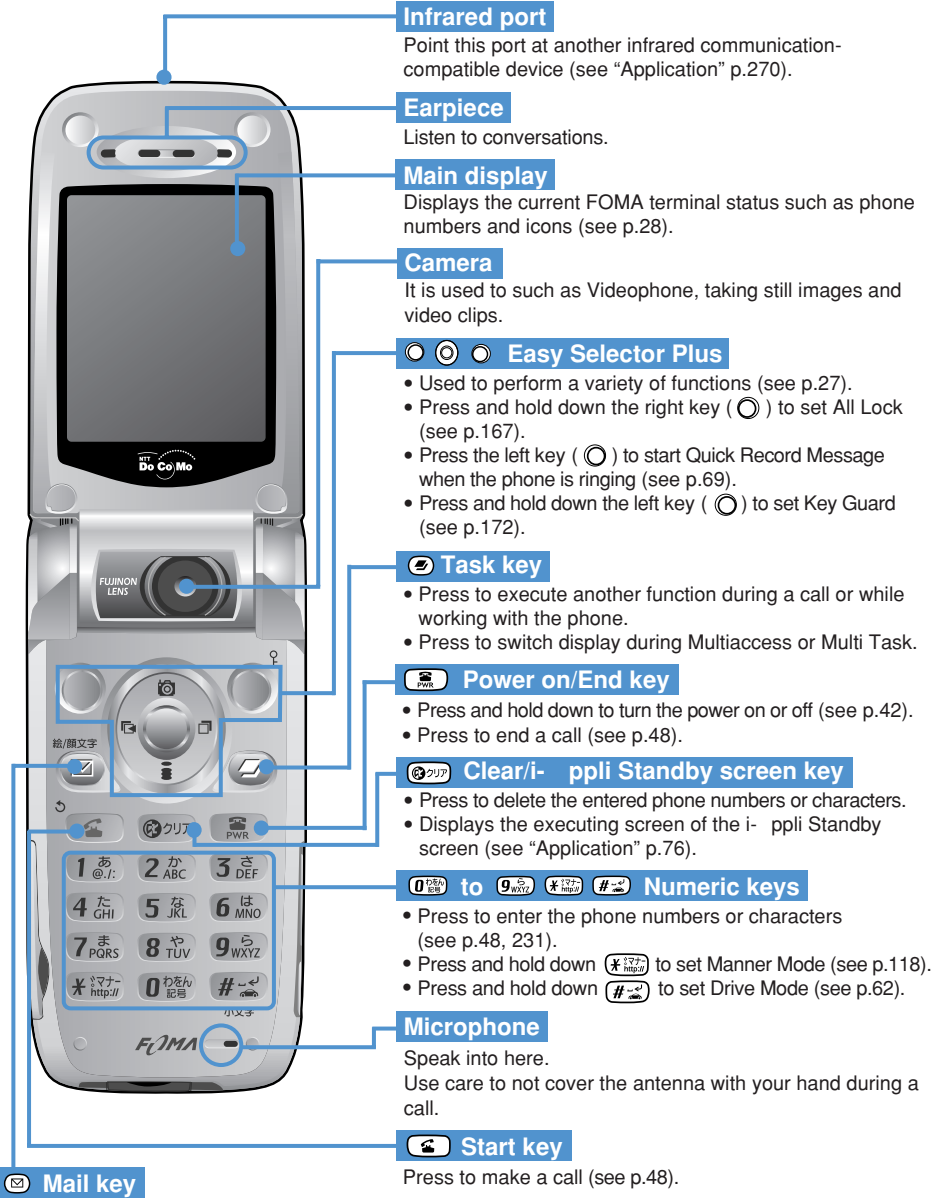
Sample

Optional products

- Carrying case D02
 - In-car holder D01
 - Flat switch-equipped earphone/microphone D01/P02
 - Earphone jack adapter P001
 - Switch-equipped earphone/microphone P001/P002
 - DC adapter D01
 - Battery D02
 - Data communication adapter D01
 - Stereo earphone set P001
 - Flat stereo earphone set P01
 - Earphone terminal P001
 - Flat AV power cable P01
- The switch-equipped earphone/microphone, stereo earphone set, earphone terminal is not available without connecting Earphone jack adapter.

Introduction

FOMA D900i Components and Functions



Infrared port

Point this port at another infrared communication-compatible device (see "Application" p.270).

Earpiece

Listen to conversations.

Main display

Displays the current FOMA terminal status such as phone numbers and icons (see p.28).

Camera

It is used to such as Videophone, taking still images and video clips.

Easy Selector Plus

- Used to perform a variety of functions (see p.27).
- Press and hold down the right key (○) to set All Lock (see p.167).
- Press the left key (○) to start Quick Record Message when the phone is ringing (see p.69).
- Press and hold down the left key (○) to set Key Guard (see p.172).

Task key

- Press to execute another function during a call or while working with the phone.
- Press to switch display during Multiaccess or Multi Task.

Power on/End key

- Press and hold down to turn the power on or off (see p.42).
- Press to end a call (see p.48).

Clear/i- ppli Standby screen key

- Press to delete the entered phone numbers or characters.
- Displays the executing screen of the i- ppli Standby screen (see "Application" p.76).

0 P.S.A. to 9 W.V.T. * 123456789 # *

- Press to enter the phone numbers or characters (see p.48, 231).
- Press and hold down to set Manner Mode (see p.118).
- Press and hold down to set Drive Mode (see p.62).

Microphone

Speak into here.
Use care to not cover the antenna with your hand during a call.

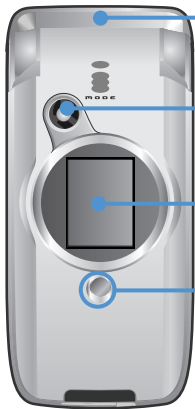
Start key

Press to make a call (see p.48).

Mail key

- Press to display Mail Menu (see "Application" p.117).
- Press and hold down to display the compose i-mode mail screen (see "Application" p.118).

Dimensions (mm): 49 (W) × 106 (H) × 27 (D) (when closed) Weight (g): Approx. 124 (with battery attached).

**Antenna (built-in)**

Use care not to cover the antenna with your hand during a call so that you can use your FOMA terminal on better conditions.

Speaker

Emits sound such as ringtones.

Inspiration window

Displays icons that indicate the time or FOMA terminal status. Still images taken with the camera or image downloaded via i-mode can also be displayed (see p.30, 149).

The light goes on when there is an incoming call.

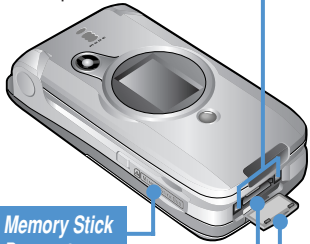
Rear Key

Used to switch display in the Inspiration window (see p.26).

Flashes when a call is received or while receiving mail. Lights red when the battery is charging.

Recharging terminals

Used when recharging the FOMA terminal on the desktop holder.

**Memory Stick Duo port****Connector**

After removing the protective cap, the AC adapter or DC adapter (optional) are plugged into this connector.

Protective cap**Compact light**

Turning on when using the camera to take images.

Camera

It is used to such as Videophone, taking still images and video clips.

Hole for attaching handstrap**Closeup switch**

Used to switch between normal photography and closeup (see "Application" p.198).

Rear cover/battery

Insert the battery in the rear of the FOMA terminal and close the rear cover.

**Side Key A****Side Key B**

Press Side keys A and B to switch display on a screen-by-screen basis. They are also used such as when taking still images and video clips (see p.26).

Side key C

Used for a shutter key or REC key for video clips (see "Application" p.26).

Connecting earphone/microphone jack**Earphone/microphone jack/AV connector**

Used to connect a flat switch-equipped earphone/microphone (optional), flat AV power cable and other devices. You can use a conventional switch-equipped earphone/microphone by connecting an earphone jack adapter (see p.189). You can see the video clips or still images taken with the camera on TV screen with connecting flat AV power cable. Do not use AV cable other than the specified flat AV power cable P01 (optional).

Note

- For functions of various keys used during character entry (see p.231).

Main operations that you can perform with the Rear key and the Side keys

A: Available NA: Not available

Function	Operation	Open	Closed	Status of FOMA terminal	
Camera/ Barcode reader	Start taking still image	Press and hold down for more than 1 second.	A	A	In standby
	Release shutter	Press .	A	A	While taking a still image
	Start taking video	Press and hold down for more than 1 second.	A	A	In standby
	Start/end recording	Press .	A	A	While taking a video clip
	Zoom	To increase the scale factor, press . To decrease it, press .	A	A	While taking a still image/video clip
	Display setting status	Press .	NA	A	While taking a still image/video clip
	End taking still image or video	Press and hold down for more than 1 seconds.	A	A	While taking a still image/video clip
	Start Barcode Reader	Press and hold down for more than 1 second. ²	A	A	In standby
	Start/cancel Barcode Reader	Press .	A	A	While Barcode Reader is activated
	Switch the code	Press .	A	A	While Barcode Reader is activated
Sound	Adjust Ring Volume	To increase the volume, press . To decrease it, press .	A	A	While receiving a call
	Adjust Earpiece Volume	To increase the volume, press . To decrease it, press .	A	A	During a call
	Stop alarm tone and mail ringtone, etc.	Press one of , or .	A	A	While an alarm tone, mail ringtone, etc., is sounding
	Quick Record Message	Press and hold for more than 1 second.	A	A	While receiving a call
Record Message	Start recording voice memo while in standby	Press .	A	NA	In standby
	Start recording during dialing	Press .	A	A	While dialing, while calling
	Start recording voice memo during a call	Press .	A	A	During a call
	Stop recording voice memo	Press .	A	A	During recording
	Videophone	Switch LCD	Press .	A	NA
Start/stop recording video memo		Press .	A	NA	During starting Still Image Memo ³
Take still image memo		Press .	A	NA	During a videophone call
Other	Copy and paste letter	Press to copy and to paste.	A	NA	While the character entry screen appears
	Start Voice Memo Player	Press .	A	NA	In standby
	Change display range	To scroll upward screenful, press . To scroll downward, press . Press either key for more than 1 second for Auto Scroll.	A	NA	While, Voice Memo Player is activated, and in the Phonebook Search result screen, etc. ⁴
	Start and release Answer Hold	Press and hold down for more than 1 second.	A	A	While receiving a call, during on hold
	Set/cancel Manner Mode	Press and hold down for more than 1 second.	A	A	In standby
	Check New Message	Press and hold down for more than 1 second. ²	A	A	In standby
	Operate Inspiration Window	Pressing turns it on in nondisplay mode, and switches the display when the backlight is on.	NA	A	In standby
	Open Memory Stick menu	Press .	A	NA	In standby

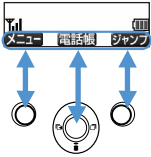
Open: The FOMA terminal is open. Closed: The FOMA terminal is closed.

- 1: Whether zooming is available or what scale factor can be used depends on the image type (still image or video) or photo size.
- 2: The function to be executed differs depending on the settings of side key act (see p.185).
- 3: When the display is switched to the Inspiration window in Switch LCD, this function cannot be operated.
- 4: When you are selecting the image in the Back Display setting, you can operate this function even if the FOMA terminal is closed.

How to use Easy Selector Plus

Pressing the Easy Selector Plus left (○), center (⊙) and right (○) keys performs the operation displayed in the left, center and right of the guide bar.

Example While in standby



Guide bar

Pressing the left key (○) displays Main Menu.

Pressing the center key (⊙) displays the Phonebook search screen.

Pressing the right key (○) displays Jump Menu.

⊙ can be pressed right, left, up or down



When operation can be executed to right, left, up or down

• ▲▼◀▶ indicates effective operational direction of ⊙ at the time it appears in the guide bar. For example, in the selection screen press ⊙ to change the selected item. You can also use ⊙ to move the displayed range up or down and use ⊙ to switch to a web page or mail item before or after the one currently being displayed. When you keep pressing ⊙ the item and the displayed range are switched continuously (Auto Scroll).

- Use ⊙ to select the desired entry field when the screen has multiple entry fields.
- To adjust sound volume or contrast, use ⊙ to select the desired setting.
- To enter the date or time, use ⊙ to change the current value.
- Use ⊙ to move the cursor while entering characters.
- To select a menu item from Main Menu, press ⊙ to select the desired item. Press ⊙ (select) to fix the menu selection (see p.31).

- Press ⊙ to display the camera menu. Press and hold down ⊙ to start taking still images.
- Press ⊙ to display i-mode Menu. Press and hold it down to display iMenu.
- Press ⊙ to display the Call History list.
- Press ⊙ to display the Redial Data list.

Conventions used in this manual

• In this manual, operations assigned to buttons are as described below.

Example: Press ○ (Menu). ... When ○ is assigned to **メニュー**.

• This manual describes the operation of the easy selector Plus (⊙) as shown below.

- ⊙ ...Press the center button
- ⊙ / ⊙ ...Press up/Press down
- ⊙ ...Press up or down
- ⊙ / ⊙ ...Press left/Press right
- ⊙ ...Press left or right
- ⊙ ...Press up, down, left or right

• This manual describes the operation of the Rear key, Side key A and B are as shown below.

- ⓧ Rear key ...Press the Rear key.
- ⓧ SideC ...Press the Side key C.
- ◀ZOOM▶ ...Press the Side key A.
- ◀ZOOM▶ ...Press the Side key B.
- ◀ZOOM▶ ...Press the Side key A or B.

Note

- While displaying a site, display of the guide bar may differ depending on the characteristics of the site.

Viewing the Display

Missed Call icon (see p.64)

- No recorded messages*
- Recorded messages waiting*
- Videophone recorded messages waiting*

Voice Mail icon (see p.203)

- New messages are stored at the Voice Mail Service Center.*
- * Number indicates the total no of missed calls.

Mode icons

- Ringtone level 0 (see p.136)
- Drive Mode and Manner Mode are set simultaneously.
- Drive Mode is set. (see p.62)
- Manner Mode is set. (see p.118)
- Vibrator is set. (see p.121)

When Drive Mode, Manner Mode and Vibrator are set in combination, the icon , or appears in the same order of priority as that of the functions.

Record Message icon (see p.65)

- Record Message is set (not yet recorded).
- Messages or voice memos have been recorded (with the total number of recordings made).¹
- Max. no. of items recorded/No recording time remaining¹

Note1: A blue icon indicates Record Message is on and a gray icon indicates it is off.

Videophone Record Message icon (see p.65)

- Record Message is set or videophone messages or video memos have been recorded
- Max. no. of items recorded/No free space remaining²

Note2: A black icon indicates Record Message is on and a gray icon indicates it is off.

Signal strength indicator, outside service area indicator, during communication indicator, etc.

- Signal strength (reception level)
 : Strong : Medium : Weak
- Outside the service area or too weak signal to sustain communication
- During a voice call
- During a videophone call
- Communication speed of Videophone (32K/64K)
- Self Mode is set (see p.171)

Icons for other communication status (see "Application" p.10)

- During i-mode communication
- During packet communication
- During 64K data communication
- During Multiaccess (i-mode and a voice call)
- During Multiaccess (packet and a voice call)
- During infrared communication
- Copying data to/from *Memory Stick Duo*
- During data transfer via the data link software




Note: The background of the above Standby screen is only an example. You can use your favorite image as the background of the Standby screen (see p.144).


Guide bar

Operations that can be executed using Easy Selector Plus () are shown. (see p.27)


Mail icon

 Mail reception status (see “Application” p.11).



New mail/Message R/F icon

 There is a new mail/Message R/F (see “Application” p.10)




Message R/F icon

 Message R/F reception status (see “Application” p.11).




PIM Lock icon, FOMA Card SMS full icon

 PIM Lock is set (see p.168).
 FOMA Card is full with Short Message (SMS) (see “Application” p.10).



Alarm icon, Schedule icon

 Alarm is set (see p.176).
 Snooze standby
 An activity is scheduled on that day (see p.177).


Battery Level icon

 Fully charged.
 Partially charged.
 Almost completely discharged.
 Recharge the battery. (see p.39)



If recharging is unsuccessful, one of the icons indicated below may appear during recharging (see p.40).

 Recharging stopped. (The ambient temperature is outside the appropriate range (5-35°C)).
 Recharging error



i- ppli Standby Screen icon

 i- ppli Standby screen is displayed (see “Application” p.10)


Task icon (see p.197)

 1 task is activated.
 2 or more tasks are activated.


i- ppli icon (see “Application” p.10)

 i- ppli is running
 During the infrared remote control communication


SSL icon

 An SSL page is displayed. (see “Application” p.10)

Connecting to an external device icon

 External device status (see “Application” p.10)

Icons indicating reception during other operation

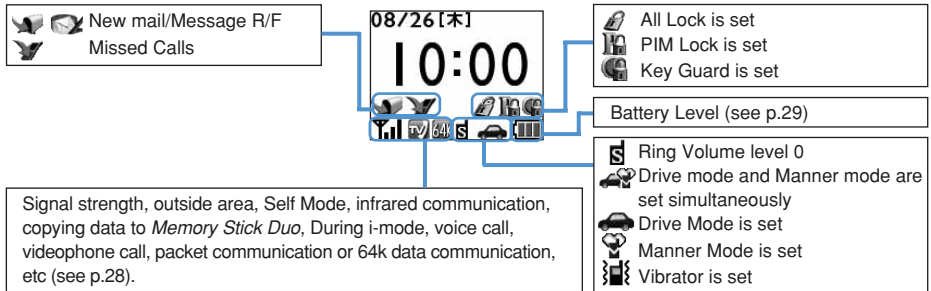
 Mail/Message R/F is received during other operation (see “Application” p.10)

Note

- Though the D900i display is the product of very sophisticated technology, there may be pixels that do not light or that are on at all times. This is not a malfunction.
- Due to the characteristics of the main display, horizontal line or shadow may be displayed depending on the displayed image.
- Note that screens shown in this manual may differ from those that actually appear in terms of color, brightness, etc. Background colors may be removed in order to make the screen legible.
- When you select an video/i-motion for the Standby screen, some icons may not appear until playing back is ended.

Viewing the Inspiration window

When the FOMA terminal is closed, the clock or status of the FOMA terminal appears on the Inspiration window. While the clock or icon is displayed, you can press the Rear key to toggle the clock or icon display on or off.



Note: When the clock or icon is set to be nondisplayed, the icon is not displayed during a call.

When Power Saver is set to “nondisplay mode”

When the FOMA terminal is closed and no action is performed in Standby, the display of the Inspiration window goes off in about 1 minute (see p.150).

About various displays

In the following situations, the FOMA terminal status is indicated on the Inspiration window:

Category	Status
Voice call	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Dialing • Calling • Talking • Receiving a call • Answer Hold • Call Hold • Answering by Record Message • Recording a message etc.
Videophone call	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Dialing • Calling • Connecting • Talking • Receiving • Answer Hold • Call Hold • Preparing for Record Message • Answering by Record Message • Recording a message • Terminating, etc.
Mail/Message R/F	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Receiving • Sending • When transmission fails, etc.
Packet communication/64 K communication	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • During communication • Receiving • Connecting • Terminating
Others	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Adjusting contrast • When Alarm time is arrived • Recording a voice memo • Low battery • Memory shortage • When in the hot location • During Software Update

(Example) Receiving mail



(Example) Adjusting contrast



Note

- Depending on the characteristics of the LCD, the image may remain immediately after changing it on the Inspiration window, but it disappears if time passes. This is not a malfunction.
- The clock and background image displayed in the Inspiration window can be changed (see p.149).
- You can adjust contrast when the Inspiration window is difficult to view (see p.156).
- The display brightness of the Inspiration window can be changed (see p.157).

Selecting Menu

Various functions of the FOMA terminal can be selected and performed from Menus.

Selecting functions from Menu

Example Selecting “音量調節” from Menu

1 Press  (メニュー).

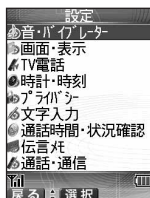


Main Menu appears.

- If no key is pressed for about 3 minutes, the main menu disappears automatically and the Standby screen reappears.
- The selected menu icon is animated. Explanation for the icon menu appears. You can also set it to not appear (see p.32).

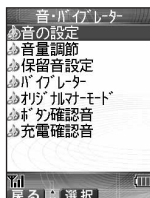
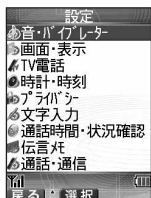
“でんわ” is selected.

2 Use  to select the menu item and press  (選択).



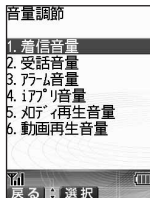
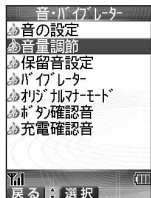
In this example, use  to select “設定”, then press  (選択) to display the setting menu.

3 Use  to select the menu item and press  (選択).



The sound-vibrator menu appears.

4 Use  to select the menu item and press  (選択).



The sound type selection screen appears.

5 Use  to select the setting item and press  (選択).

The Adjust Volume screen appears.

- Alternatively, you can press the item number using the numeric keys to set an item.



Setting explanation for the icon menu ON/OFF

- “ON” is set by default.

1 In standby, select “設定” “画面表示” “アイコンメニュー説明 ON/OFF” from Menu.



2 Select “1.ON” or “2.OFF” and press  (選択)
ON/OFF is set.

To cancel an operation after selecting a menu item

- To return to the previous screen, press  (戻る) or .

Example:









- You can use  (戻る) only in screens where  戻る appears in the guide bar.


- To return to the Standby screen, press and hold down  (戻る).

Example:

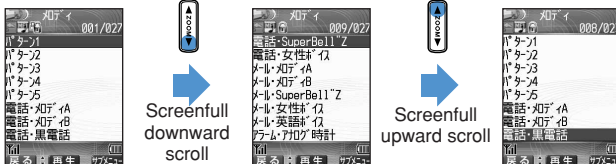



- If you press  in the various setting screens or Inmail Box, return to the previous menu screen. If you press  in the menu screen, return to the Standby screen. (Note that pressing and holding down  turns the power off.)
- If you press  before storing or setting the content while you edit characters or change settings, “終了しますか? (end?)” appears. Select “はい” and press  (選択) to return to the menu screen or the Standby screen without saving the operation.
- Note that pressing and holding down  (戻る) before storing or setting the content ends the operation without displaying a prompt (The setting is not saved).

To scroll up and down through screens

If there are items that cannot be displayed at one time such as the menu screen, Phonebook Entry screen or a list of icons, you can press  to scroll the displayed contents on a screen-by-screen basis. (Screenfull scroll)

Example:



- Continue pressing  to scroll the screens.

Note

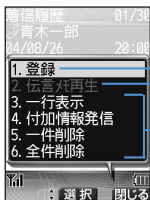
- If you register a frequently used menu item as a Jump Menu item, you can view the operation quickly and execute it (see p.182).

Selecting functions from submenus

In a screen where サブメニュー appears in the guide bar, you can execute operations by selecting items from the submenu.

Example To change the Call History list from a 3-line layout to a 1-line layout. (see p.58)

1 In the Call History list, press (サブメニュー).



The submenu appears.

Selected item



Item that cannot be executed (cannot be selected)

Item that can be executed

2 Use to select “3.一行表示” and press (選択).



The 1-line layout appears.

- An item can be selected by pressing a numeric key corresponding to the item number ( here).
- Press  (閉じる) to exit the submenu without selecting an item.

Note

- Submenu contents vary by the screen.

Using a FOMA Card

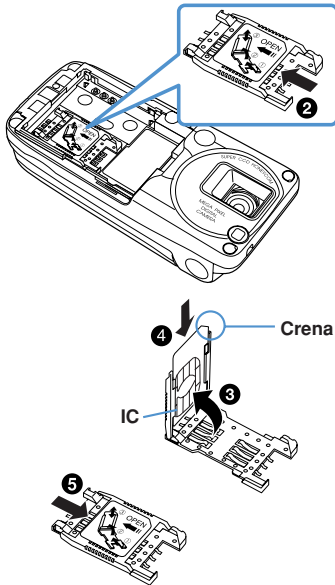
Use a FOMA Card to save your phone number and other information. Insert a FOMA Card into a FOMA-compatible terminal to use the card.

- For details on how to handle a FOMA Card, refer to the applicable FOMA Card instruction manual.

Inserting and removing a FOMA Card

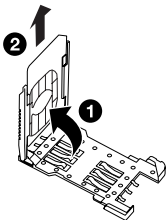
Use your FOMA terminal with a FOMA Card inserted. If the FOMA Card is not inserted in your FOMA terminal, first insert it.

Inserting a FOMA Card



- 1 Remove the rear cover and the battery pack (see p.38).
 - 2 Slide the lid of the FOMA Card case in the direction of the arrow. This will unlock the lid.
 - 3 Open the lid.
 - 4 Insert a FOMA Card in the slot inside the lid in the direction of the arrow shown in the figure.
 - 5 Close the FOMA Card case and slide it in the direction opposite to that shown in step 2 until it clicks into place to lock it.
- *1 If you cannot close the FOMA Card case successfully, slide the FOMA Card a little in the direction opposite to the insert direction.
- 6 Reattach the battery pack and the rear cover (see p.38).

Removing a FOMA Card



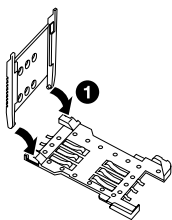
- 1 Open the lid of the FOMA Card case.
 - The procedure is the same as steps 1 to 3 in *Inserting a FOMA Card*.
- 2 Pull out the FOMA Card.

Note

- Before inserting or removing a FOMA Card, turn the power off.
- Forcibly inserting a FOMA Card may damage it. Insert the FOMA Card carefully.
- Carefully handle the removed FOMA Card so it does not become lost.

If the lid is removed

If the lid of the FOMA Card case is removed, follow the procedure below to replace the lid properly.



1 Insert the lid of the FOMA Card case perpendicularly into the slot on the case.

* If the lid of the FOMA Card case is removed together with the FOMA Card, remove the FOMA Card from the lid and perform operation in step 1.

ID codes of a FOMA Card

There are 2 ID codes for a FOMA Card: "PIN1 code" and "PIN2 code".

ID code	Description
PIN1 code	A 4 to 8-digit ID code entered each time your FOMA Card is inserted in your FOMA terminal or turn the terminal power on, to prevent the illegal use of your FOMA terminal by any third parties. Entering the PIN1 code allows you to make/receive a call and operate communication functions (see p.162).
PIN2 code	A 4 to 8-digit ID code used for applying the issuance of a user certificate and using the certificate (see "Application" p.54, 26).

- The check using the PIN1 code is not set by default. You can use your FOMA terminal without entering the PIN1 code. When you set the use of the check (see p.162), you must enter the PIN1 code after you turn the terminal power on.

Changing a PIN code

Both the PIN1 and PIN2 codes are "0000" by default. You can change the codes to any desired number (see p.163). If an invalid PIN1 or PIN2 code is entered 3 times, the FOMA terminal is automatically locked. Be sure to keep a separate record of the codes you have set.

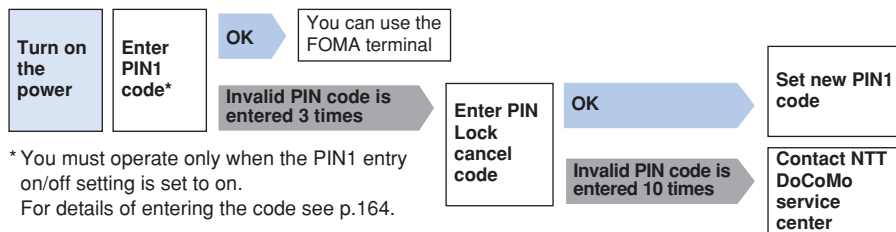
If you want to insert the FOMA Card you are in use into your new FOMA terminal, use the same PIN1 and PIN2 codes you have set before.

About the PIN Lock cancel code

The PIN Lock cancel code is used to cancel the PIN1 or PIN2 code lock status.

At the time of purchase, you were informed of the code. You can enter the PIN lock cancel code to cancel the lock status.

If an invalid PIN Lock cancel code is entered 10 times, the FOMA terminal is automatically locked. Be sure to keep a separate record of the PIN Lock cancel code. If you forget the PIN Lock cancel code or you cannot cancel the PIN Lock status, contact NTT DoCoMo service center.



* You must operate only when the PIN1 entry on/off setting is set to on.
For details of entering the code see p.164.

About the FOMA Card Security function




A FOMA terminal has the FOMA Card Security function to protect your data and files.

- When you download data or a file as follows to your FOMA terminal with your FOMA Card inserted, the FOMA Card Security function is automatically set for the downloaded data or file:
 - When you download an image, melody, i-motion, Chara-den, or i- ppli application from an i-mode site or Internet web site
 - When you receive i-mode mail or Message R/F with a file attachment
 - When you receive i-motion mail and import or save a video/i-motion clip from i-motion mail
 - When you downloaded images, melodies and video/i-motion clips from i- ppli
 - When you save a still image or video memo of a videophone call
- Data or a file for which the FOMA Card Security function is set can be displayed, played back, edited, set, attached to mail, sent using the infrared communication function, and copied onto a *Memory Stick Duo*. You only can do this when the FOMA Card used when the data or file was downloaded is inserted.
- If the FOMA Card being inserted when data or a file was downloaded is replaced with another one, the data or file for which the FOMA Card Security function is set cannot be displayed, played back, edited, set, attached to mail, sent using infrared communication, or copied onto a *Memory Stick Duo*.

Note: The following explanation assumes that the FOMA Card used when data or a file was downloaded is “your FOMA card” and a FOMA Card other than that is “another person’s FOMA Card”.

When your FOMA Card is not inserted

If your FOMA Card is removed or another person’s FOMA Card is inserted, images, melodies, i-motion, Chara-den, and i- ppli applications for which the FOMA Card Security function is set are treated as follows:

- If you attempt to display or play back a file by selecting “マルチメディア” from Menu,  appears on the list screen and you cannot display or play back the file. As an image, video/i-motion, the image shown at right is displayed in the picture list or details screen.
- Any image in received mail, sent/unsent mail, Message R/F, or screen memos is not displayed and  or  appears in place of the image. You cannot play back any melody. You cannot also import or play back a video/i-motion clip from i-motion mail.
- You cannot execute any i- ppli application you downloaded.
- You cannot set data or a file for which the FOMA Card Security function as a screen or ringtone. If you have set data or a file for a screen or ringtone when you insert your FOMA Card, the setting is invalidated. The default screen or ringtone is used.



Example: If you have set “melody A” for which the FOMA Card Security function is set for a ringtone:

If you remove your FOMA Card or replace it with another person’s FOMA Card, the ringtone is restored to the default. If you insert your FOMA Card again, the ringtone is restored to “melody A”. If the Ringtone setting has been changed with your FOMA Card removed or another person’s FOMA Card inserted, the ringtone is not restored to “melody A” even after your FOMA Card is inserted again.

If a setting other than the default setting is available, the setting is used. For example, if the i- ppli application set for the i- ppli Standby screen is made unavailable by the FOMA Card Security function, the Standby screen selected by the Standby Image setting of the Standby Screen setting appears.

Note

- The FOMA Card Security function is not set for data or a file copied from *Memory Stick Duo* or received using the infrared communication function or data forwarding, or a video clip or still image video clip shot using the built-in camera.
- When another person's FOMA Card is inserted, you can also move and delete a file or data for which the FOMA Card Security function is set.
- If you download an i- ppli application or Chara-den from a site to replace the default one, the FOMA Card Security function can be set for it.

About the version of a FOMA Card

If you want to use a FOMA Card (blue) on the D900i, note that the blue FOMA Card differs from the FOMA Card (green) in functions as listed below.

Function	FOMA Card (blue)	FOMA Card (green)	Page
Number of digits for a phone number that can be saved in Phonebook of the FOMA Card	Up to 20-digits	Up to 26-digits	p.100
Operation of a user certificate for using FirstPass	Unavailable	Available	"Application" p.54
WORLD WING	Unavailable	Available	—

About WORLD WING

WORLD WING is the DoCoMo's FOMA International Roaming Service which can dial or receive a call with the mobile phone number a contract of is made in Japan also at the time of use overseas by changing the FOMA Card (green) to the mobile phone for overseas corresponding to the service (GSM system) . WORLD WING is an optional service that you need to subscribe to before use. For details, contact the followings:

For inquiries (in English)



0120-005-250 (toll free)

*Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs

* Please confirm the phone number before you dial.

For inquiries (in Japanese only)



No prefix 151 (toll free)

*Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSs

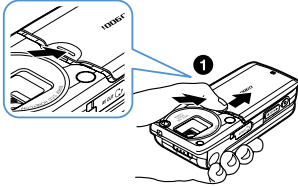
0120-800-000 (toll free)

*Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs

Attaching and Removing the Battery

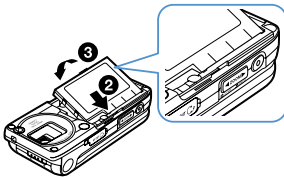
- Be sure to turn off the power with the FOMA terminal closed when attaching and removing the battery.
- Be careful not to touch the camera.

Attaching the battery



1 Remove the rear cover.

While pressing the indentation on the top of the rear cover with your thumb, slide it in the direction of the arrow until it is removed.



2 Insert the battery connector into the phone at the angle shown in the illustration.

Do not force the battery connector into the phone. Doing so could damage the body connector or the battery connector terminals.



3 Insert the battery.

4 Place the rear cover on the phone leaving it about 5 mm away from its closed position.

5 Slide the rear cover into place.

Failure to follow the correct procedure could damage the rear cover.

Removing the battery



1 Remove the rear cover.

2 Remove the battery.

Grasping the projections on the battery, remove the battery from the phone.

The FOMA terminal main display and Inspiration window use an active LCD. Depending on the characteristics of the active LCD, afterimages or crossbar may remain for several seconds when the battery is being attached or removed. Do not be concerned; this is not a fault.

Battery recycling

The phone uses a lithium ion battery containing valuable materials that should be recycled. To protect the environment, return used batteries to an NTT DoCoMo service center, NTT DoCoMo agent or recycling center.

- Please take the following precautions when recycling batteries:
 - Attach a piece of adhesive tape on the used battery terminals.
 - Do not disassemble or modify batteries.

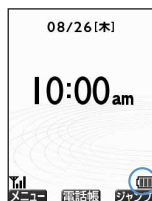


Li-Ion

Recharging

When the battery charge gets low, recharge it.

- The Battery Level icon shows how much charge remains in the battery.



- : Fully charged.
- : Partially charged.
- : Almost completely discharged. Recharge the battery.

Recharge time and length of use reference

Recharge time	Continuous call time	Continuous standby time
About 120 minutes	During a voice call About 170 minutes During a videophone call About 90 minutes	While standing still About 550 hours While moving About 420 hours

- Continuous call time is measured with good signal conditions.
- Continuous standby time is measured while moving with the FOMA terminal closed and with good signal conditions. The call time and standby time may be halved, depending on the amount of charge in the battery, the selected, the ambient temperature and signal strength (i.e. when there is no signal or the signal is weak). If you use i-mode communication, the call/communication time and standby time will be shorter. Even if you do not make a call or use i-mode, the call/communication time and standby time will also be shorter when composing i-mode mail, or running a downloaded i- ppli application or i- ppli Standby screen.
- “Continuous standby time while standing still” is an average value measured in a condition where you are standing still with the FOMA terminal closed and with good signal conditions.
- “Continuous standby time while moving” is an average value measured in a condition where you are standing still, moving, or outside the area with the FOMA terminal closed and with good signal conditions.
- Alternatively, If you use data communication, Multiaccess, or camera, the call/communication time and standby time will also be shorter.

Notes about the battery




- Use the D02 type battery.
- The battery will gradually wear out. Each time it is recharged, it will accept slightly less charge than the previous time. When the battery charge lasts only half as long as when it was new, replace it with a new one. The battery will wear out after about 1 year’s use. Note that depending on how often the phone is used battery life may become shorter.

Starting/Ending recharging and other items to note

The battery can be charged regardless of whether the FOMA terminal power is on or off. However, recharging takes longer with the FOMA terminal power turned on.

- When recharging is started, the Rear key turns red.

A charging sound is emitted and the Battery Level icon blinks when recharging starts with the FOMA terminal turned on.

Icon	Rear key	Meaning
	Recharging: Lights red Recharged: Goes off	Recharging normally.
	Goes off	Inappropriate ambient temperature. Recharging was stopped to protect the battery from extreme temperatures. Move the terminal to a location where the temperature is between 5°C and 35°C, and recharge again.
	Blinks red	Recharging error. Reattach the battery or check that the adapter is connected correctly.

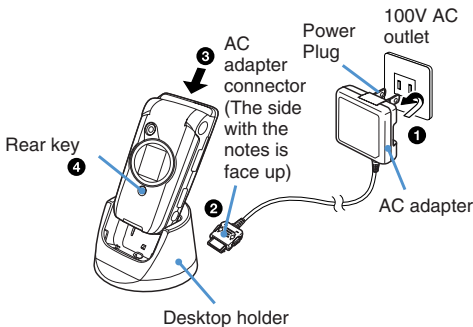
- If the Rear key does not turn red at the start of charging or it flashes red, recharging is unsuccessful. If the battery still cannot be recharged even after recharging again, contact your nearest DoCoMo service center (see p.270).
- You can set your FOMA terminal to not emit a charging sound (see p.143).
- When recharging is completed, the Rear key goes off. A charging sound is emitted and the Battery Level icon is lighted when the battery is charged with the FOMA terminal power turned on (Recharging is not complete while the Battery Level icon is blinking).
- You can set your FOMA terminal to not emit a charging sound (see p.143).
- Do not recharge the battery for an excessive length of time (i.e. longer than a full day) with the FOMA terminal turned on. The phone uses power so the adapter continues recharging until the FOMA terminal is unplugged from the adapter. In such a case, the AC or DC adapter charges again but if the FOMA terminal is removed in the middle of recharging, the following could occur:
 - Low Battery level
 - Battery alarm sounds
 - FOMA terminal could run out of charge quickly
- If the battery is sufficiently charged, connecting the FOMA terminal to the AC or DC adapter may not trigger the recharging process.
- If the battery is recharged for an excessive length of time with the AC or DC adapter connected, the ambient temperature may be inappropriate.

Recharging from a wall outlet

You can recharge the battery with the FOMA terminal either closed or open.

- The battery can only be recharged when it is attached to the FOMA terminal.
- Be careful not to touch the camera lens.

To recharge the battery in the desktop holder



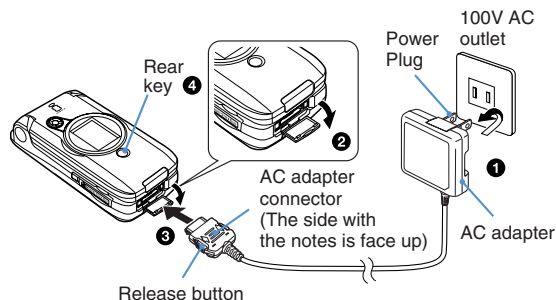
- 1 Unfold the power plug from the AC adapter and plug it into a 100V AC outlet.
- 2 Plug the AC adapter connector into the desktop holder.
- 3 Insert the FOMA terminal into the desktop holder.
- 4 Check that recharging starts.

Remove the FOMA terminal from the desktop holder when recharging is completed.

- Note that recharging may not be performed if the protective cap for the connector is not firmly closed.

To recharge the battery with just the AC adapter

You can recharge the FOMA terminal only with the AC adapter. This is useful when recharging the battery while away from home.



- ❶ Unfold the power plug from the AC adapter and plug it into a 100V AC outlet.
- ❷ Open the protective cap at the bottom of the FOMA terminal.
- ❸ Plug the AC adapter connector in firmly until it clicks into place.
- ❹ Check that recharging starts.

When recharging is completed, remove the AC adapter connector from the FOMA terminal with pressing the both release buttons on the sides of the AC adapter connector. Unplug the AC adapter from the outlet. Close the protective cap.

Note

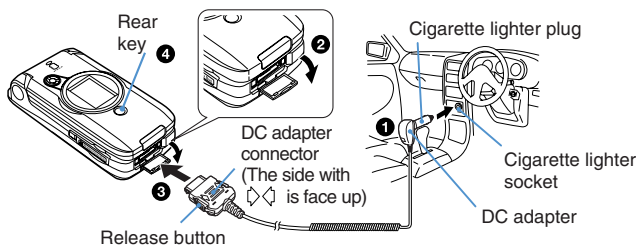
- For more detailed information, refer to the manuals for the AC adapter and desktop holder.

Recharging in a car

You can use the DC adapter (optional) to recharge the battery in a car. Recharging can be performed in negative ground cars (both 12V and 24V vehicles).

- ❶ Insert the cigarette lighter plug of the DC adapter into the cigarette lighter socket of the car.
- ❷ Turn off the FOMA terminal and open the protective cap at the bottom of the FOMA terminal.
- ❸ Firmly insert the DC adapter connector until it clicks into place.
- ❹ Check that recharging starts.

When recharging is completed, remove the DC adapter connector from the FOMA terminal with pressing the release buttons on the both sides of the DC adapter connector. Then remove the cigarette lighter plug from the cigarette lighter socket. Close the protective cap.



Note

- For details, see the manual accompanying the DC adapter.
- The car battery may be discharged if you charge your phone with the engine off. Only charge the battery when the engine is running.
- When you are not using the DC adapter to charge the battery, remove it from the cigarette lighter socket.
- The DC adapter fuses are consumable items. (DC adapter: 125V/2A) New fuses are available at most car dealerships.

Turning the Power On/Off

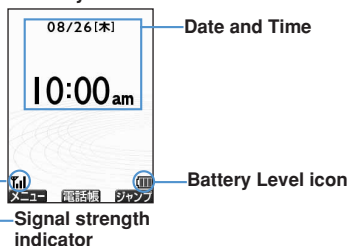
Turning the power on


1 Open the FOMA terminal, press and hold down .

The Standby screen appears after an animation is shown (Wake-up Display).

- If the key is not held down long enough, the power does not turn on.
- PIN1 code entry screen may appear depending on the setting (see p.164).
- The Wake-up Display or the Standby screen can be changed (see p.152, 144). The background of the Standby screen shown below is only an example. (It is different from the default setting.)

Standby screen



- If you are using an internet service provider other than DoCoMo, the service provider selection screen appears. Select the service provider and press  (選択).
- Some functions cannot be used immediately after the power is turned on because the FOMA Card data is being read. If you are going to perform those functions at this time, the message indicating that they are not available is displayed. Wait for a while and try again.

Turning the power off

1 Press and hold down .

All indicators on the screen disappear after an animation is shown.

- If the key is not held down long enough, the power does not turn off.

When High temperature alarm display appears



High temperature alarm display may appear when the FOMA terminal become warm such as when you talk in the location of high temperature. Wait till the terminal temperature goes down.

- When you are talking, the call is disconnected after 20 seconds.
- When in standby, you cannot perform the FOMA terminal operation such as making a call or selecting Menu. When there is an incoming call, the call reception screen does not appear and you cannot answer the call.
- When the FOMA terminal temperature goes down, you can use the terminal as usual.

Checking Battery Level

You can check the current battery level.

1 Turn on the FOMA terminal.



The Battery Level icon appears.

: Fully charged.

: Partially charged.

: Almost completely discharged. Recharge the battery.

- Turning the power on/off (see p.42)

Battery Level icon

Appears also on the Inspiration window

Using sound and display to check the battery level

You can use sound and/or the display to check the remaining battery level.

- When the Battery Level icon is not shown at times such as immediately after the power is turned on, the battery level cannot be checked.
- The Battery Level icon is a guide to how much charge remains.

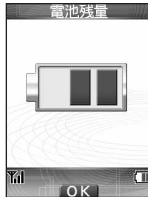
1 In standby, select “設定” “通話時間・状況確認” “電池残量” from Menu.

The battery level appears.

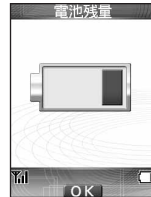
Fully charged
(Beeps three times)



Partially charged
(Beeps twice)



Almost completely discharged
(Beeps once)



Recharge the battery.

Note

- When the battery nearly runs down, the message “充電して下さい (charge the battery)” appears in the main display or the Inspiration window, an alarm sounds, and after a minute or so the power goes off (To stop alarm, press). During a call, an alarm sounds, and after about 20 seconds the call ends.
- In the following cases, however, no beeps sound:
 - In the Manner mode
 - In the Drive mode
 - When Keypad Sound is off.

Confirming Your Own Phone Number

You can display your own phone number of the FOMA Card.

1 In standby, select “でんわ” “自局番号” from Menu.



- The mail address is not displayed by default.
- Your name and mail address and other information are displayed if they are saved (see p.181).
- Alternatively, you can press **○** (メニュー) and **○** (電話) to display your own phone number.

2 Confirm the contents and press **○** (OK).

Setting the Date and Time

Set the date and time. If you do not set the date and time, following functions are not available, including:

- Standby screen (seasonal image, calendar) (see p.144)
- Auto Power Off (see p.174)
- Schedule (see p.177)
- Executing i- ppli DX (see “Application” p.63)
- Auto Start of i- ppli (see “Application” p.71)
- Using *Memory Stick Duo* (see “Application” p.280)
- Auto Power On (see p.173)
- Alarm Time (see p.174)
- Software Update (see p.272)

In addition to the above, when the date and time are not set, they are not displayed for the redial data item, call history item, recorded message and the title or shooting time of still images taken with the camera, etc.

1 In standby, select “設定” “時計・時刻” “日付時刻設定” from Menu.



2 Set the date and time.

You can enter a date from January 1st 2004 to December 31, 2023. When you set the date, the day of the week is filled in automatically on the Standby screen.

Set the time in 24-hour system (00:00 to 23:59).

- ① Select the “日付” field and press (選択).
- ② Use to to enter the current year (4-digits), month (2-digits) and day (2-digits) and press (確定).
- ③ Select the “時刻” field and press (選択).
- ④ Use to to enter the current hour (2-digits) and minute (2-digits) and press (確定).
 - When entering the month, day and time, 1-digit numbers (1 to 9) must be preceded by a 0 (01 to 09).
 - Use to adjust the amount of time.
 - If you make a mistake, use , (), or to move the highlight to the number you want to set again.

3 Press (設定).

The date and time are set and the clock starts from 00 second of the input date and time.

Note

- Temporarily removing the battery for replacement does not cause the date and time data to be erased. However, if the battery is removed from the phone or you leave the battery discharged for more than 1 month, the date and time data will be lost. In such a case, you must recharge and set the date and time again.
- If you have made a reservation to Software Update, you cannot change the date and time.

Basic Operations

Making a Call

1 Enter a phone number.



- About phone numbers

Calling a general subscriber phone	Enter the area code even when you are in the same area code.
Calling a mobile phone	090-XXXX-XXXX or 080-XXXX-XXXX
Calling a PHS terminal	070-XXXX-XXXX

- Up to 80 digits are valid for the phone number. If more than 80 digits are entered, they are discarded from the beginning of digits.
- If you enter a wrong number:
To delete one digit at a time, press .
To delete all digits at once, press (戻る) or press and hold down (the Standby screen reappears).

2 Press .



A call is made to the displayed phone number. First the dial tone and then the ring back tone is heard in the earpiece.

- If the receiver's phone number is saved in Phonebook, the name appears.

The number disappears once then reappears and start blinking

When you want to stop making a call

Press .

When you hear a busy signal

The line is busy. End the call by pressing , wait a while and dial again. You can easily dial a previously-dialed number using Redial Data (see p.50).

If you hear an announcement indicating that the call cannot be connected

The receiver's FOMA terminal, mobile phone, or PHS terminal is off or in a place where the signal does not reach.

When you hear an announcement asking you to display Caller ID and dial again

The receiver uses Caller ID Display Request Service (see p.219).

Turn Caller ID Notification on or add "186 (* 31#)" before the receiver's phone number and dial again (see p.217, 52).

3 To end the call, press .



Call time is displayed for about 5 seconds and the Standby screen reappears.

- To quickly return to the Standby screen, press (OK).

Various methods for making a call



Adding a number saved in the Prefix setting to making a call

When you save a number (such as "009130010" for making an international call) prefixed to a phone number using the Prefix setting (see p.129), you can make a call easily.




- ① Enter a phone number.
- ② Select "8.プレフィックス選択" from the submenu.
- ③ Select a number and press  (選択).
- ④ Press  .

Specifying a subaddress and making a call

When you set the Subaddress setting to "ON" (see p.129), you can make a call with specifying a subaddress.

- ① Enter a phone number.
- ② Press  (＊). ＊ 1234 5678
- ③ Enter a subaddress.
- ④ Press  .

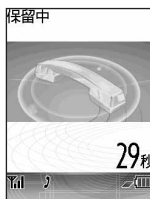
Note

- Do not cover the antenna with your hand, so your FOMA terminal will have better reception.
- Steps 1 and 2 can be performed in reverse order when making a call. If you stop operation after pressing , press .
- Reception is unstable if you make or receive a call while moving. Due to the characteristics of digital communication, a call could be suddenly interrupted. Faint signals may prevent you making a call even if the "圏外" indicator is not displayed. It is recommended that you select a location with good reception (when you are indoors, preferably close to a window where the reception level is .
- You can end your call or put it on hold by closing your FOMA terminal (see p.133).
- You cannot make a videophone call during a voice call.
- If a videophone call is received during a voice call (see p.76)

Putting a call on hold while talking (Call Hold)








- If you preset Close Operation to "保留", you can put a call on hold while talking by closing your FOMA terminal (see p.133).
- Even during hold, call cost will be charged.
- You can put a call on hold before answering it (Answer Hold) (see p.62).
- The received voice or videophone call during a call or on hold is recorded as a missed call in Call History.

1 While talking, select "1.通話相手保留" from the submenu.



- During hold, the other party hears a hold message or hold melody. To charge the hold message or hold melody (see p.132).

2 Press when you are ready to take the call.

- When Any Key Answer is set, you can answer the call by pressing any of , ,  to ,  and  as well as  (see p.131).

Redialing a Previously Dialed Phone Number

The FOMA terminal stores the last 30 calls you made as Redial data (Dial History). You can recall these numbers and redial them or store them as Phonebook entries.

- The redial data item is not displayed if “リダイヤル表示” in the Log Display setting is off.

1 In standby or during a call, press .







The Redial Data list appears.

- Alternatively, you can select “でんわ” “リダイヤル” from Menu in standby to access this screen.
- If the displayed phone number is saved in Phonebook, the name appears.

2 Select the phone number to call and press .

The selected phone number is dialed.

Repeated beeps are heard from the earpiece followed by a ring back tone.

- Press  to display the redial data item starting from the most recent call; press  to display it starting from the oldest call.
- To make a videophone call, press  ().

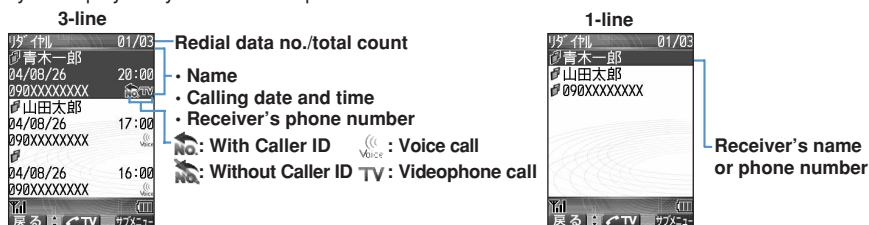
3 Press to end the call.

The call time is displayed for about 5 seconds and the Standby screen reappears.

About the Redial Data list

The layout of the Redial Data list can be switched between 3-line layout and 1-line layout. 3-line layout displays more data, including the calling date and time and the receiver's phone number.

1-line layout displays only the receiver's phone number or name.





- To switch from 3-line layout to 1-line layout, select “2.一行表示” from the submenu. To return to 3-line layout, select “2.三行表示” from the submenu.
- Names saved in Phonebook do not appear on the display in the following cases:
 - When Phonebook entries are stored in the Secret memory
 - When PIM Lock is set
 - When the phone number including the “184 (#31#)” or “186 (✳31#)” prefix does not match a phone number saved in Phonebook.
- When you make 31 or more calls, the oldest data item is deleted when the next call is made.
- If you make more than once to the same phone number, the most recent data item replaces the previous item.
- If the date and time have not been set, “00/00/00 00:00” appears as the calling date and time.

Registering phone numbers in Phonebook from the Redial Data list

- ① **Select a phone number from the Redial Data list and select “1.登録” from the submenu.**
The selection screen asking for the destination appears.
- ② **Select “1.本体電話帳” or “2.FOMAカード電話帳” and press  (選択).**
 - Repeat from Step2 in *Saving Entries in the FOMA Built-in Phonebook* (see p.94) or *Saving Entries in the FOMA Card Phonebook* (see p.99)


Note

- Alternatively, you can press  and  to make a call to the most recent redial item.
- Redial Data is saved even if a call is not connected.
- Redial Data is saved only for phone numbers made to parties that are stored in the Secret memory or when PIM Lock is set. (the name is not displayed). Delete redial data items that you do not want others to see.
- You can compose mail from the redial data list (see “Application” p.133).

[Delete Redial Data]

Deleting items from Redial Data

- 1 Select a phone number in the Redial Data list and select “4.一件削除” from the submenu.**

- Alternatively, you can press and hold down  to delete data.
- To delete all data items at once, select “5.全件削除” from the submenu.

- 2 Select “はい” and press  (選択).**

- The redial data item is deleted.
- To cancel the operation, select “いいえ”.

Note

- Setting PIM Lock and Keydial Lock deletes redial data items for all calls made prior to setting (see p.169, 168).

Activating or Deactivating Your Caller ID before Making a Call

You can select whether or not to send your phone number (Caller ID) to a recipient before making a call, regardless of the Caller ID Notification setting (see p.217).

- You cannot use "186 (*31#)" (notify) or "184 (#31#)" (not notify) for international calls.

1 Enter a phone number.



The phone number is displayed.

- To select whether or not to send your Caller ID for a phone number recorded as a redial data or call history item or saved in Phonebook, retrieve the desired phone number from the relevant function screen and select "付加情報発信" from the submenu.
 - Submenu numbers vary by the screen.
- You can select whether or not to send your Caller ID in the same way when using *Phone to* from a site, Screen Memo, mail, and Message R/F, making a call from mail, and using *Phone to* from an i- ppli application. When "発信しますか？ (Send?)" appears, proceed to Step 2.



2 Select "5.発信番号非通知 (Not send Caller ID)" (not notify), "6.発信番号通知 (Send Caller ID)", or "7.通知非通知無 (Not select)" (notify).



Setting appears

3 Press .








According to the selected condition, a call is made.

- Press  () to make a videophone call.








Adding "186 (*31#)" or "184 (#31#)" to a number when dialing

① Enter a number as follows:

- To send your Caller ID:

Press "   and the phone number" or "    and the phone number" in that order.

- To send no Caller ID

Press "   and the phone number" or "    and the phone number" in that order.

② Press .

- Steps ① and ② can be performed in reverse order when making a call.

Note

- Your Caller ID will only appears on devices that can display Caller IDs such as mobile phones.
- Names saved in Phonebook appear in Redial Data only when a phone number that includes "186 (*31#)" or "184 (#31#)" completely matches the phone number saved in Phonebook.
- A call with "184 (#31#)" from a person whose phone number is saved in Phonebook causes the anonymity reason to be displayed (see p.128).
- When you search phonebook entries and select a number that includes "186 (*31#)" or "184 (#31#)", you can also select whether or not to send your Caller ID.

Quickly Sending Touch Tones


You can use Phonebook to save dial operations that let you quickly send a series of touch tones. This feature is useful for sequences of operations that you frequently perform, such as listening to messages at home phone, sending a message to DoCoMo's pager (Pocket Bell)* or interacting with voice prompt systems.

- You can enter a pause only when saving numbers in Phonebook. You cannot directly dial a phone number that contains a pause.

Example Saving dial operations to check messages at home

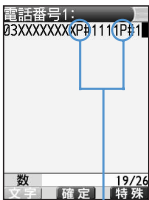
Home phone number	Code number for messages at home	Playback operation number
03XXXXXXXX	#1111	#1

Saving dial operations in Phonebook


1 In the Phonebook Entry screen, select the “電話番号1”, “電話番号2” or “電話番号3” field and press  (選択).

- Saving the phonebook entry (see p.94, 99)

2 Enter “03XXXXXXXX  #  1111  #  1”.



A pause is indicated as “P”.

- Press  at a location at which you want to insert a pause.
- Up to 26 digits can be entered, including pauses.
- You can enter consecutive pauses.
- A pause occurs once for each entered pause.
- Pauses entered at the end of the entry are invalid.

3 Press  (確定).

4 Press  (登録).

Note

- Touch tones may not be received on the receiver's device depending on the device model.

* In January 2001, DoCoMo's pager (Pocket Bell) was renamed "QUICKCAST".

Performing dial operations



1 Select dial operations from Phonebook or Redial Data.

- Searching the phonebook entry (see p.106)
- Displaying Redial Data (see p.50)

2 Press and fit the earpiece into your ear.

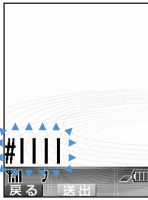


The dialed phone rings and the answer message is played.

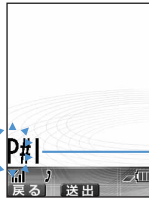
- To stop sending touch tones, press  (戻る) or .

Blinks during a call.

3 Press (送出).



Blinks

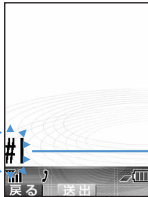


The touch tones (code number "#1111") up to the pause (P) are sent.

The answering machine answers the call.

Blinks after sending "#1111".

4 Press (送出).



Blinks.

The final tones in the series are sent (playback operation number "#1").

After all touch tones have been sent, the talking screen appears.

The recorded messages at home are played back.

WORLD CALL

Making an International Call

WORLD CALL is an international call service that can be used from DoCoMo digital system mobile phones and car phones.




- No application is required for WORLD CALL when you subscribe to FOMAサービス.
- The service covers about 220 countries and areas in the world.
- WORLD CALL charges are included in the monthly bill for your mobile phone.
- No subscription or monthly charge is required.
- You can use the FOMA terminal display to check the about time for the last call you made using the WORLD CALL service (see p.135).

1 Press **0** わろん 総局 **0** わろん 総局 **9** ら WXYZ **1** あ @.: **3** さ DEF **0** わろん 総局 , **0** わろん 総局 **1** あ @.: **0** わろん 総局 , country code, area code, destination phone number,  , in that order.

- You can save the above number in Phonebook.
- If the area code of the phone number you are calling begins with 0, leave out the 0 (when calling to general subscriber phones and other phones in Italy, dial 0).

• Customers using 3G specified terminals can use the International Videophone call with dialing in the Videophone mode after dialing procedure above.*2
 *1 Communicate with Hutchison3GHK (Hong Kong) and Hutchison3GUK (England) as of March 2004
 *2 Depending on the International Videophone call receiver's terminal, images which is displayed on the caller's screen may be damaged or unable to connect.
 *1, *2 For details, see NTT DoCoMo homepage.



To make an international call easily

- 1 Enter the country code, area code and receiver's phone number.
- 2 Select "8.プレフィックス選択" from the submenu and press  (選択).
- 3 Select "1.009130010" and press  (選択).
 - When using an international call service agency other than DoCoMo, set the number in the Prefix setting to select it.
- 4 Press .

Changes in the procedure for dialing an international call

Since mobile communication with mobile phones, etc. is not included in the My Line service, WORLD CALL is also not available as part of the My Line service. However, a dialing procedure is changed that allows you to make international calls from mobile phones (FOMA terminals). Note that the previous dialing procedure (eliminating the "010" sequence from the above procedure) cannot be used.

Inquiries

<p>For inquiries (in English)</p>  <p>0120-005-250 (toll free) <small>*Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs</small></p> <p>* Please confirm the phone number before you dial.</p>	<p>For inquiries (in Japanese only)</p> <p>No prefix 151 (toll free) <small>*Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSs</small></p>  <p>0120-800-000 (toll free) <small>*Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs</small></p>
---	---

- To use an international call service agency other than NTT DoCoMo, ask the agent directly.

Receiving a Call

When a call is received, the ringtone sounds and the Rear key flashes.









- When you cannot answer a call (see p.64)

1 When you receive a call, open the FOMA terminal.



- If the call includes a Caller ID, the phone number appears. If there is no Caller ID, the reason there is no Caller ID is indicated (see p.128).
- If the caller's phone number is saved in Phonebook, the caller's name also appears.
- When Manner Mode is set, the terminal vibrates to let you know that a call is received (see p.118).

2 Press to answer the call.

- When Any Key Answer is set, you can also answer the call by pressing any of , , ,  to ,  and  as well as  (Any Key Answer) (see p.131).

3 To end the call, press .

The call time appears for about 5 seconds and the Standby screen reappears.

About the display when there is an incoming call

- When a call is received in standby, an image appears on the main display and Inspiration window (when closed) in the following order of preference. However, if a voice or videophone call from third parties is received during a voice or videophone call, Chaku-motion does not appear even if Chaku-motion is set:

Priority order	Setting	Main display	Inspiration window
1	Chaku-motion is set	Chaku-motion	Reception images preset in the FOMA
2	Photo Call is set.	Images saved in Phonebook	Images saved in Phonebook
3	Partner is set.	Partner images	Reception images preset in the FOMA
4	No the above settings	Reception images preset in the FOMA	Reception images preset in the FOMA

- The Inspiration window (when closed) displays the caller's phone number and name saved in Phonebook.
 - If there is no Caller ID, the reason there is no Caller ID appears (see p.128).
 - You can set your FOMA terminal to not display phone numbers or names (see p.151).
- You can set your FOMA terminal to not display the image saved in Phonebook (see p.148).
- When PIM Lock is set or caller's phone number is stored in the Secret memory, the name or image saved in Phonebook does not appear.

Handling method for when you cannot answer a call

You can select one of the following handling methods from the submenu while the terminal is ringing: Also in this case, the missed call is recorded in Call History (see p.58).

Submenu	Handling method	Page
1. 応答保留 Answer Hold	Puts the call on hold	p.62
2. 留守番電話 ¹ Voice Mail	Connect the call to the Voice Mail Service Center.	p.203
3. 転送でんわ ² Call Forwarding	Transfers the call to the forwarding phone number.	p.208
4. 着信拒否 Reject Call	Rejects the call	—

1 Requires Voice Mail Service subscription. 2 Requires Call Forwarding Service subscription.

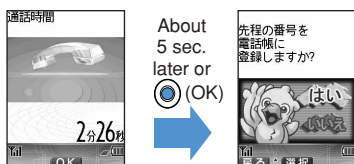
When a beep (second call beep) is heard during a call

If you have subscribed to Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service or Call Waiting Service and the services are set, a call waiting beep indicates there is another incoming call. This second call can be handled as described below according to the type of services you subscribe to.

Subscribed service	FOMA terminal action	Page
Voice Mail Service	The call is transferred to the Voice Mail Service Center.	p.203
Call Forwarding Service	The call is transferred to the forwarding phone number.	p.208
Call Waiting Service	The call in progress is put on hold while you answer the second call.	p.213

If you receive a call from a caller not found in Phonebook

After the call, a prompt appears asking whether to save the caller's phone number in Phonebook. If no operation is performed for about 15 seconds, the prompt automatically disappears and the Standby screen reappears.



- If you have saved or set before receiving a call, the selection screen appears lately when the Standby screen reappears.

- If you do not want to save the phone number, select “いいえ” and press (選択). Use the following procedure to save the phone number in Phonebook.
 - ① Select “はい”, and press (選択).
A selection screen asking for the destination appears.
 - ② Select “1.本体電話帳” or “2.FOMAカード電話帳” and press (選択).
 - Repeat from Step2 in *Saving Entries in the FOMA Built-in Phonebook* (see p.94) or *Saving Entries in the FOMA Card Phonebook* (see p.99)
- No prompt appears if “電話帳” is off in Assist Partner (see p.160).
- The prompt does not appear in the following situations:
 - When a call is made to another party
 - When there is no Caller ID
 - When PIM Lock is set

Note

- Use care not to cover the antenna with your hand, so that you can use your FOMA terminal on better conditions.
- No ringtone will sound while in the Manner mode or in the Drive mode. (see p.118, 62)
- The FOMA terminal cannot be called by phones that cannot dial the area code portion of phone numbers, such as office internal phones or those connected through a PBX (private branch exchange).
- The wave intensity is unstable if you make or receive a call while moving. Due to the characteristics of digital communication, a call could be suddenly interrupted. Faint signals may prevent you from receiving a call even if the 圏外 (outside area) indicator does not appear. It is recommended that you select location with better signal conditions (When you are indoors, preferably close to a window where the reception level is).

Using Call History

Your FOMA terminal stores the date, time and phone number in Call History for up to the last 30 incoming calls. You can call up call history items and use them to make calls or save numbers in Phonebook.

- Call History does not appear if “着信履歴表示” in the Log Display setting is off.

Example Calling a person who called

1 In standby or during a call, press .







The Call History list appears.

- Alternatively, you can select “でんわ” “着信履歴” from Menu in standby to access this screen.
- If the call includes a Caller ID, the phone number appears. When there is no Caller ID, the reason there is no Caller ID is indicated (see p.128).
- When the phone number of the caller is saved in Phonebook, the caller's name appears.

2 Select the phone number to call and press .

The selected phone number is dialed.

Repeated beeps are heard from the earpiece followed by a ring back tone.

- Press  to display Call History starting from the most recent call, press  to display it starting from the oldest call.
- To make a videophone call, press  (.

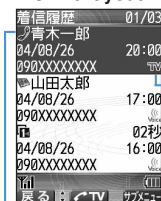
3 To end the call, press .

The call time appears for about 5 seconds, and the Standby screen reappears.

To view the Call History list

- The layout of the Call History list can be switched between 3-line layout and 1-line layout. 3-line layout displays more data, including the received date and time and the caller's phone number. 1-line layout displays only the caller's phone number or name.

3-line layout

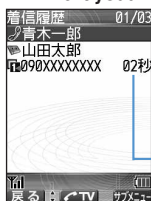


Call History no.
total count

- Name
- Received date and time
- Caller's phone number
- Call reception type




Answer /No answer





1-line layout




Caller's name or phone number
Ring time (when not answered)

- To switch from 3-line layout to 1-line layout, select “3.一行表示” from the submenu. To return to 3-line layout, select “3.三行表示” from the submenu.

- Receiving type is indicated by the following icons:
 : Incoming voice call  : Incoming videophone call  : 64K data communication
- Whether or not the call was answered is indicated by the following icons:

Normal Receive	 : Answered  : Not answered  : Answered by Record Message or Videophone Record Message
Mute Receive	 : Not answered


- When you answer by Quick Record Message,  appears regardless of the normal receive or Mute Receive.
- When Mute Ring Time is set to a number except for 0 seconds, a call is received from a party who is not saved in Phonebook, and the call is disconnected within the set Mute Ring Time, received calls are recorded in Call History as Mute Receive (see p.124)
- The names saved in Phonebook do not appear on the display in the following cases:
 - When there is no Caller ID
 - When phonebook entries are stored in the Secret memory
 - When PIM Lock is set
- When you do not answer a call, the ring time is displayed with the length of time between when the ringtone started and when it ended. (Maximum display time: 99 seconds)
- When you receive 31 or more calls, the oldest data item is deleted when the next call is received.
- If the date and time have not been set, "00/00/00 00:00" appears as the received calls date and time.

To use Call History to save phone numbers in Phonebook

You cannot save a phone number from a call history item that does not include a Caller ID.

- 1 **Select a phone number from the Call History list and select "1.登録" from the submenu.**

A selection screen asking for the destination appears.

- 2 **Select "1.本体電話帳" or "2.FOMAカード電話帳" and press  (選択).**


• Repeat from Step2 in *Saving Entries in the FOMA Built-in Phonebook* (see p.94) or *Saving Entries in the FOMA Card Phonebook* (see p.99)

To play back Record Message



 appears on Call History that contains a recorded message or quick recorded message.

- 1 **Select an item from the Call History list and select "2.伝言メモ再生" from the submenu.**

A recorded message is played back.

- To stop playback, press  (停止).
- Deleting a recorded messages (see p.70)
- Playing a videophone recorded message (see p.71)


Note

- Alternatively, you can press  and press  to make a call to the phone number of the most recent log item.
- Calls cannot be made from Call History when Keydial Lock is set.
- A call made using Dial-in Service may indicate a phone number that differs from the Dial-in number of the other party.
- You can compose mail from the Call History list (see "Application" p.133).

[Delete Call History]

Deleting items from Call History

1 Select a phone number from the Call History list and select “5.一件削除” from the submenu.

- Alternatively you can press and hold down  to delete log items.
- To delete all items at one time, select “6.全件削除” from the submenu.

2 Select “YES” and press  (選択).

- The call history item is deleted.
- To cancel the operation, select “いいえ”.

Earpiece Volume

[Default] レベル4 Level 4

Adjusting the Sound Volume of the Other Party During a Call

The sound volume of other party you hear in the earpiece can be set to one of 6 levels, from level 1 to level 6.

This section describes how to adjust the sound volume of the other party during a call.

- Adjusting the sound volume in standby (see p.136)



1 During a call, press .

Current sound level

2 Use  to select the Earpiece Volume level and press  (設定).

Earpiece Volume is set and you can talk with this volume any time.

Note

- In steps 1 and 2, you can adjust the volume with  instead of .

Adjusting the Ring Volume While the Terminal is Ringing

Ring Volume can be set to one of 7 levels, from level 0 to level 6.

This section describes how to adjust the sound volume of the other party while the terminal is ringing.

- Adjusting the Ring Volume level in standby (see p.136)
- Alternatively, you can set your FOMA terminal to gradually increase (“Step Up”) or decrease (“Step Down”) the volume in standby. You cannot select “Step Up” or “Step Down” while the terminal is ringing.



1 While the terminal is ringing, press .






Current sound level

2 Use to select the Ring Volume level.

The ringtone plays at the adjusted volume level. If no operation for more than 2 seconds, the Ring Volume level is set automatically and the call reception screen reappears.

- When “レベル0” is selected, the ringtone does not sound.
- When you press  (設定), the setting is saved and ringtone plays at this volume level any time.
- You can press  to set the volume level and answer a call (The setting is saved after ending of the call).

Note

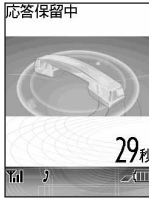
- In steps 1 and 2, you can adjust the volume with  instead of .
- If Ring Volume is set to “レベル0”, the ringtone does not sound when there is an incoming call. In the main display or Inspiration window,  appears.

Putting a Call on Hold When You Cannot Answer It Immediately

You can put a voice or videophone call on hold while the phone is ringing (Answer Hold).
 • Even during Answer Hold, the call cost will be charged to the caller.

Example When a voice call is received

1 While the terminal is ringing, select “1. 応答保留” from the submenu.



Repeated beeps are heard and the call is put on hold.

- For a voice call, the caller hears an announcement indicating that you are currently unable to answer the call.
- For a videophone call, “応答保留中” appears after “TV電話応答保留” appears. An image on which characters “応答保留” are superimposed is sent to the caller.
- The caller hears a hold message. To change a hold tone (see p.132).
- You can also put a call on hold by pressing or pressing and holding down (Side C).
- The call is disconnected when the caller hangs up or when you press while the call is on hold before answered.

2 Press when you are ready to take the call.

- When Any Key Answer is set, you can answer the call by pressing any of , , to , and (see p.131).
- When a videophone call is received, you can press () to take the call with your self image. You can press or press and hold () to take the call with the alternate image set in the Alternate Image setting.

Note

- When you use Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service and a voice call is received, you can switch to Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service by selecting “2.留守番電話” or “3.転送でんわ” from the submenu. When a videophone call is received, you can switch to Call Forwarding Service by selecting “3.転送でんわ” from the submenu.
- Even when Close Operation is set to “切断”, when you close your FOMA terminal, the call on hold before answered is not ended.
- While Manner Mode is set, repeated beeps are not heard when you put the call on hold.
- The received voice or videophone call during a call or on hold is recorded as a missed call in Call History.

Drive Mode

[Default] 解除 Turned off

Disabling to Receive a Call While Driving a Car

Drive Mode is an auto answer service for safe driving. When Drive Mode is set, the caller hears an announcement that you are currently driving and are unable to receive calls, then the call is ended. You can turn Drive Mode on or off even when you are outside the service area.

1 In standby, press and hold down .



Drive Mode is set.

- When Manner Mode is set along with Drive Mode, Drive Mode takes precedence over Manner Mode (appears).

Displayed while Drive Mode is on.
 Displayed also on the Inspiration window.

When Drive Mode is set

- When a call is received, the terminal neither rings nor vibrates. The call is recorded in Call History (the Missed Call icon appears). The Rear key does not flash.
- The caller hears an announcement explaining that you are currently driving and unable to answer calls and then the call is ended. If the phone is off or is outside the service area, an announcement explaining this is played back (The announcement for the Drive mode is not played).
- When a mail is received, the phone neither rings nor vibrates. When the FOMA terminal is closed, the Inspiration window displays the screen displayed during message reception and the message reception screen. The Rear key does not flash.
- The ringtone, Keypad Sound, alarm tone, and other sounds emitted from your FOMA terminal are turned off. You cannot eliminate the shutter sound of still image or video photographing or auto timer sound. You also cannot also adjust the sound volume.
- You can make calls.

Call reception during Drive Mode

If you set Drive Mode while any DoCoMo Network Service are activated, incoming calls are handled as described below:

Service	Call reception
留守番電話サービス Voice Mail Service (A service subscription is required.)	When a call is received, the ringtone does not sound. The call is recorded in Call History (the Missed Call icon appears). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When there is a voice call, the caller hears an announcement indicating that you are driving and the call is connected to the Voice Mail Service Center automatically. • When there is a videophone call, a message indicating that you are driving appears on caller's screen (The call is not connected to the center).
転送でんわサービス Call Forwarding Service (A service subscription is required.)	When a call is received, the ringtone does not sound. The call is recorded in Call History (the Missed Call icon appears). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When there is a voice call, the caller hears an announcement indicating that you are driving and the call is forwarded. • When there is a videophone call and the forwarding phone number is for a voice call a message indicating that unable to connect appears on the caller's screen. When the forwarding phone number is a videophone number which supports 3G-324M (see p.72), the call is forwarded.
キャッチホンサービス Call Waiting Service (A service subscription is required.)	When a call is received, the ringtone does not sound. The call is recorded in Call History (the Missed Call icon appears). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When there is a voice call, the caller hears an announcement indicating that you are driving. • When there is a videophone call and a message indicating that unable to connect appears on the caller's screen.
迷惑電話ストップサービス Nuisance Call Blocking Service (A service subscription is required.)	When a call is received, the ringtone does not sound. The call is not recorded in Call History. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When there is a voice call, the caller hears announcement of call rejection. • When there is a videophone call, a message indicating that unable to connect appears on the caller's screen.
番号通知お願いサービス Caller ID Display Request Service	When a “非通知設定” call is received, the ringtone does not sound. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When there is a voice call, the call is recorded in Call History. The caller hears an announcement requesting the caller to display the Caller ID. • When there is a videophone call, the call recorded in Call History (the Missed Call icon appears). A message indicating that you are driving appears on the caller's screen.

Canceling Drive Mode

- 1 In standby, press and hold down .

Drive Mode is turned off.

Checking Missed Call

When you cannot answer an incoming call or the Record Message function answers the call, the Missed Call icon appears in the Standby screen (except when Quick Record Message is used). When the Missed Call icon appears, you can check who called by displaying Call History.

- Call History does not appear when the “着信履歴表示” in the Log Display setting is off.



- : When you cannot receive a call*
 - : When a call is answered by Record Message*
 - : When a call is answered by Videophone Record Message*
- * The number indicates the total number of missed calls items

- One of the above icons appears. When multiple calls were missed with or without Record Message or Videophone Record Message, the Missed Call icon appears for the most recent call.
- The number of missed call items saved in Call History appears (Up to 30 calls). The number of the missed call items that have already been confirmed is not included. If a call is received when 30 calls are already saved in Call History and a missed call item is deleted, the number for the Missed Call icon is decreased.
- The icon disappears when:
 - You display Call History.
 - You activate Voice Memo Player (when the Record Message icon appears)
 - You display a videophone recorded message or video memo. (when the Videophone Record Message icon appears)
 - You delete all recorded messages and voice memos (when the Record Message icon appears)
 - You delete all videophone recorded messages (when the Videophone Record Message icon appears)
- appears on the Inspiration window (Regardless of whether or not Record Message answers the call, the same icon appears without the number of calls).

1 When there is a Missed call item, press .

Call History appears.

- Calls can be made and recorded messages can be played from Call History (see p.58, 59).

Recording the Caller's Message When You Cannot Answer a Call

When you cannot answer a received voice or videophone call, you can set your FOMA terminal to play back an answer message and record the caller's message (Record Message).

- The Record Message function has “伝言メモ”, “テレビ電話伝言メモ” and “クイック伝言メモ”.
- You cannot record or playback messages when PIM Lock is set or an incoming call is received during a call.

Function	Description
伝言メモ Record Message	When you set Record Message and a voice call is received, the FOMA terminal plays back an answer message and records the caller's message (see p.66).
テレビ電話伝言メモ Videophone Record Message	When you set Record Message and a videophone call is received, the FOMA terminal plays back an answer message and save the video and message sent from the caller (see p.66).
クイック伝言メモ Quick Record Message	While the terminal is ringing, you can activate Record Message with a single key press even if you have not set Record Message (see p.69).

- A recorded message and quick recorded message (voice call only), a Standby Voice memo (see p.183), a In-call voice memo (see p.184) can be recorded up to about 2 minute or up to 10 items in total.
- For videophone recorded messages, the maximum recording time is 1 minute.
- If 10 messages have already been recorded when a call is received, or the remaining recording time is less than 10 seconds, no messages can be recorded. The answer message is not played back. Delete unnecessary recordings (see p.70). Quick Record Message is always available even if you do not delete any messages (The most recent Record message or Voice memo overwrites the oldest).
- If the maximum number of recordings that can be saved is exceeded or there is not enough free space in the memory when a videophone call is received, you cannot record messages using Record Message or Quick Record Message. Delete unnecessary videophone recorded messages and video memos to free up space. If there is no videophone recorded message or video memo, delete other data to free up space in the Multimedia memory. (see “Application” p.258).
- The maximum number of videophone recorded messages that can be saved (see “Application” p.13).

Record Message and Voice Mail Service

The following table summarizes the differences between Record Message and Voice Mail Service:

Item	Record Message	Voice Mail Service
Maximum number and time of recordings	10 messages, about 2 min ¹	20 messages, 3 min each
Message retention period	No limit ²	Up to 72 hours
Storage location of message	FOMA terminal	Voice Mail Service Center
Areas permitting message playback	Within and outside the service area	Only within the service area
Conditions that permit recording	When the receiver is within the service area and the phone is on	Regardless of whether or not the receiver is within the service area or the phone is on

1 The total number and time of recordings of Messages and voice memos.

2 About 1 month if the battery is removed.

Note

- Recorded data is retained for up to about one month when the battery is removed or depleted, but may be lost after that. Since data may also be lost due to a failure in your FOMA terminal, or repair or other handling procedures, it is recommended that you maintain the data in some other form. NTT DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of saved data.

Setting Record Message


You can change the time until the answer message starts playing after a voice or videophone call is received.

1 In standby, select “設定” “伝言メモ” “伝言メモ” from Menu.

2 Select “1.する” and press  (選択).





Record Message is set. You can change the time until the answer message starts playing after the terminal rings.

- To cancel the setting, select “2.しない”.
- When 10 messages and voice memos have already been recorded, or the remaining recording time is less than 10 seconds, or the total number of recordings have been made or memory is full, a selection screen appears. To set, select “1.する” and press  (選択).

3 Use   to   to enter the time and press  (設定).

Record Message Shift Time is set.


- You can set a time period between 0 and 120 seconds.
- Use  to increase or decrease numbers.
- If you enter an incorrect number, press  to erase the number and enter a number again.

When you subscribe to Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service

- When a voice call is received and if you set Voice Mail Service (see p.203) or Call Forwarding Service (see p.208) along with Record Message, the priority varies depending on the Ring Time setting of Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service. To precede Record Message, set a time shorter than the ring time of Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service for Record Message Shift Time. When 10 messages have already been recorded or the remaining recording time is less than 10 seconds, Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is selected regardless of the Ring Time settings.

Setting time preset by default or at the time of your subscription

Record Message Shift Time	about 8 sec
Voice Mail Service ring time	about 10 sec
Call Forwarding Service ring time	about 7 sec

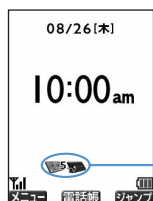
- When a videophone call is received, it is not connected to the Voice Mail Service Center. If the Forwarding Service and Record Message are set simultaneously, the one with shorter ring time takes precedence. When  is displayed on the Standby screen (see p.67), the call is connected to Call Forwarding Service regardless of the Ring Time settings.

Note

- When Auto Function is set to “する” and an earphone is connected, whether Record Message or Auto Function has priority depends on the shift time (When the shift times are the same, the auto answer function has priority).
- You cannot change the answer message.

When Record Message is set

The following icons appear depending on the Record Message setting and how many recorded messages and voice memos have been made.



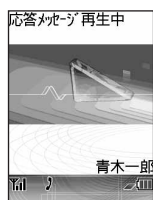
- : Set Record Message (when a recorded message or voice memo has not been recorded).
- : There are messages and voice memos (the number indicates the total number of recorded messages and voice memos).*
- : 10 messages have already been recorded or the remaining recording time is less than 10 seconds.*
- : Record Message is on or there are videophone recorded messages or video memos.*
- : 500 video clips are saved in “マルチメディア” “i モーション” “4.TV電話画像” or memory is full.*

1 A blue icon indicates that Record Message is on; a gray icon indicates that Record Message is off.

2 A black icon indicates that Record Message is on; a gray icon indicates that Record Message is off.

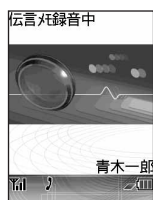
When a call is received

Example When a voice call is received



The terminal rings and the caller hears the answer message. For a videophone call, the image is also sent.

- The time until the answer message is played back can be changed (see p.66).
- For a videophone recorded message, “TV電話伝言メモ準備中” is displayed and the answer message is played back.



A beep sound announces the end of the answer message, and recording starts. A beep sounds when the recording is completed, and the call ends.

- For a videophone call, “TV電話伝言メモ録画中” appears. An image on which characters “伝言メモ” are superimposed is sent to the caller.
- For a voice call, during recording, you can hear the caller’s voice in the earpiece.
- You can press to answer the call while the answer message is being played back or during recording.

For a videophone call, you can also press () to answer the call with sending your self Image. You can press to answer the videophone call with an alternate image. The image being recorded until () or is pressed is saved.

For a voice call, you can also press the Any Key Answer function key to answer the call when Any Key Answer is set (see p.131) (For a videophone call, you cannot answer the call even if Any Key Answer is set).

- For a voice call, the recording stops automatically when the maximum recording time has elapsed (About 2 minutes in total). For a videophone call, the recording stops automatically when about 1 minute has elapsed for one recording or memory is full.





Missed Call icon appears (see p.64)

The number on the icon indicates the total number of recorded messages.

Recording a message without sounding the ringtone

- Do one of the followings after setting Record Message to “する”:
 - Set Ring Volume to “レベル0”.
 - Set the ringtone and Videophone call ringtone in the Sound setting to “サイレント”.
 - Set 0 seconds for Record Message Shift Time.
- You can record a message without setting the Record Message function. Set Record Message of Manner Mode Selection to “する”, Ring Volume to “レベル0” and turn Manner Mode on.

Note

- This function is not available when a call is received during another call.
- The recording may be interrupted when the signal is too weak.
- When receiving a voice call, while the caller is recording a message, you may hear the caller's voice in the earpiece when the caller speaks in a loud voice. In this case, you cannot adjust Earpiece Volume.
- When Record Message is not available and  appears, and you use Quick Record Message to answer an incoming call, a previously recorded message is overwritten. However, when Videophone Record Message is not available and  appears, you cannot use Quick Record Message to answer an incoming call.
- When Drive Mode is set along with Record Message, Record Message does not work.
- Even if Close Operation is set to “切断”, when you close the FOMA terminal, the Record message during answering is not ended.
- The received voice or videophone call during answering by Record Message is recorded as a missed call in Call History.

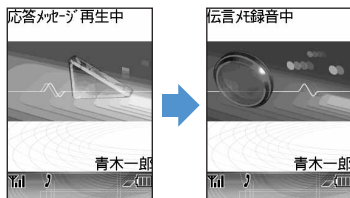
Recording a Caller's Message When You Cannot Answer an Incoming Call

While the terminal is ringing and you cannot answer a voice or videophone call, you can still play back an answer message and record the caller's message with a single key press even if you have not set Record Message.



- For a videophone call, you can record the caller's video message.
- This function is not available when PIM Lock is set or a call is received during another call.
- For a voice call, the call automatically ends when about 2 minutes of recording time have elapsed for the caller's message. For a videophone call, the call automatically ends when 1 minute of recording time has elapsed for the caller's message.

Example When a voice call is received

1 While the terminal is ringing, press (伝言).





After the playback of the answer message to the caller, the phone beeps and records the caller's message. The call time appears followed by the Standby screen when the recording ends.

- You can also press and hold down  (Rear key) while the terminal is ringing to record the caller's message.
- During recording, you can hear the caller's voice in the earpiece.
- You can press  to answer the call while the answer message is being played back or during recording. You can also press the Any Key Answer function key to answer the call when Any Key Answer is set (see p.131). For a videophone call, you cannot answer the call even when Any Key Answer is set.
- When a call is answered by Quick Record Message, the Missed Call icon does not appear.


For a videophone call

- ① While the terminal is ringing, you can press  (伝言) or press and hold down  (Rear key).

The image or voice message sent from the caller is recorded.

- An image on which characters “伝言メッセージ” are superimposed is sent to the caller.
- During recording, “TV電話伝言メッセージ録音中” appears.
- While a message is being recorded, you can press  (TV) to answer the videophone call with your self image. You can press  to answer the videophone call with an alternate image.

Note

- For a voice call, if 10 messages have been recorded or the remaining recording time is less than 10 seconds, the most recent message overwrites the oldest message. For a videophone call, if the maximum number of recordings that can be saved is exceeded or there is not enough free space in the memory, the message cannot be recorded.
- The recording may be interrupted when the signal is too weak.
- When receiving a voice call, while the caller is recording a message, you may hear the caller's voice in the earpiece when the caller speaks in a loud voice. In this case, you cannot adjust the earpiece volume.
- Quick Record Message is always available by pressing  (伝言) when a call is received. To record a message automatically, set Record Message (see p.66).
- Even if Close Operation is set to “切断”, when you close the FOMA terminal, the quick recorded message during answering is not ended.

Playing Back/Deleting Recorded Messages or Voice Memos

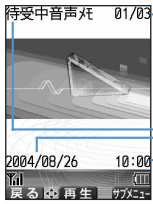
[Voice Memo Player]

Playing back a recorded message or voice memo


Play back a recorded message or voice memo (In-call/Standby Voice Memo).

- When “着信履歴表示” in the Log Display setting is off, the Record Message screen appears on Voice Memo Player, but you cannot play back messages.
- This function cannot be used while PIM Lock is set.

1 In standby, select “アクセサリ” “音声メモプレーヤー” from Menu.



The screen of the latest recorded message or voice memo appears.

- You can also press  (Slide C) with your FOMA terminal open.

Record no./total count

Type of recordings






- Record Message
- In-call Voice Memo
- Standby Voice Memo

Date of recording

Start time of recording

2 Select a recorded message or voice memo and press (再生).

The recorded item is played back.

- Press  or  to display recorded items in order starting from the newest; press  or  to display them in order starting from the oldest.
- To stop playback, press  (停止).


Note

- You can also play back a recorded message from Call History (see p.59).

Deleting a recorded message or voice memo

1 In standby, select “アクセサリ” “音声メモプレーヤー” from Menu.

2 Select a recorded message or voice memo, and select “1.一件削除” from the submenu.

- Alternatively, you can delete a recorded message or voice memo by pressing and holding down  (削除).
- To delete all recorded messages and voice memos, select “2.全件削除” from the submenu.

3 Select “はい” and press (選択).

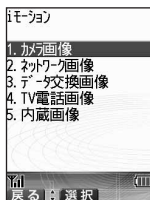
The recorded message or voice memo is deleted.

- To cancel the operation, select “いいえ”.

Playing back a videophone recorded message

- This function is not available when PIM Lock is set.

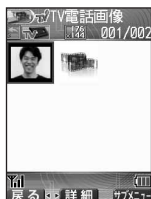
1 In standby, select “マルチメディア” “i モーション” from Menu.



2 Select “4. TV電話画像” and press (選択)

A Video memo during a videophone call is also saved in “4. TV電話画像”.

3 Select a folder and press (選択)



The picture list or title list appears (see “Application” p.248).

- Enter your terminal ID number and press (選択) when the selected folder is set in the Secret setting.

4 Select a videophone recorded message and press (詳細)

The playback screen appears.

- Press (next) or (previous) to display the next video. Press (next) or (previous) to display the previous video.

5 Press (再生)

The video is played back.

- To stop playback, press (stop). (Playback is continued even when you close the FOMA terminal during playback.)
- You can adjust the sound volume by pressing (volume).
- In the Manner mode or the Drive mode, a prompt appears. To play back video/i-motion with sound, select “はい”, to play back without sound, select “いいえ” and press (選択).

Note

- A videophone recorded messages can be played back, used, protected or deleted (see “Application” p.246).

About Videophones

Using the FOMA terminal built-in camera, the users can communicate with each other while watching the other party's image. You can use the Videophone function with the terminals that support DoCoMo's Videophone.

- DoCoMo's Videophone conforms to "3G-324M standardized by 3GPP, international standard bodies". A 3G-324M terminal cannot be connected to any Videophones using different protocols.

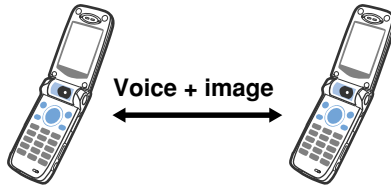
* 3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project).

A global cooperation between regional standardization bodies that was established to develop common technological specifications related to third-generation mobile communications systems (IMT-2000)

* 3G-324M

International standard for third-generation mobile videophones

- Videophone communication speed
 64 K: Communication speed Communicating at 64 kbps
 32 K: Communication speed Communicating at 32 kbps



Note

- You can use international Videophone call using "WORLD CALL" (DoCoMo international calls) (see P.54).

Layout of the screen during a videophone call



Parent screen

Child screen

Call time

The display varies by Videophone Image Display setting (see p.90).

Meaning of icons

Sent image type	: Self Image : Still Image : Chara-den
Action mode	: Full mode : Parts mode
Dial sending/Action input	: Dial sending : Action input
Still image memo/Video memo	: Still Image Memo photography enable status : Video Memo photography enable status
Hands-free	: During a call with hands-free
Videophone	: During a videophone call : During 64K communication : During 32K communication

Making a Videophone Call

1 Enter a phone number.

- The procedure is the same as that for entering a phone number for a voice call (see p.48).
- You can select an image to be sent to the other party instead of your self image from still images or Chara-den. The setting is not saved. If you select “3.代替画像選択” from the submenu, the selection screens of “1.イメージ”, “2.キャラ電” appear. (You cannot select “3.代替画像選択” when PIM Lock is set.)

To send still images

- ① Select “1.イメージ” and press (選択).
 - Repeat from Steps 2 in *Switching a sending image to a still image* (see p.79)

To send Chara-den

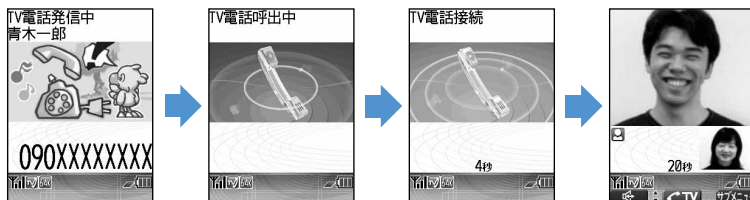
- ① Select “2.キャラ電” and press (選択).
 - Following Steps 2 in *Switching Chara-den* (see p.83)

- In addition to the above, you can perform the following operations related to Videophone from the submenu. Press (サブメニュー), select a function, and press (選択):

Submenu	Description
2. 自画像送信ON Send Self Image on	Select whether or not to send your self image.
2. 自画像送信OFF Send Self Image off	
4. 通信速度 32K Communication speed 32 K	Select a communication speed per call.
4. 通信速度 64K Communication speed 64 K	

2 Press (TV).

A videophone call is made to the displayed phone number.



- Charging starts from when “TV電話接続 (Connecting a videophone call)” appears.
- You can change a setting such as the screen display mode from the submenu during a videophone call (see p.78).

3 Press ().

The hands-free function is set and you can hear the receiver's voice in the speaker.

- To restore the hands-free function off, press () again. (When the call ends, the hands-free function is restored to off).
- When a switch-equipped earphone/microphone (optional) is connected, the receiver's voice is heard in the earphone/microphone regardless of the hands-free setting.
- When the hands-free function is off, the receiver's voice is heard in the earpiece.
- To adjust the earpiece volume, use to select the volume and press (設定). Operating procedure: (see p.60)

4 To end the call, press ().

Call time is displayed for about 5 seconds and the Standby screen reappears.

- To quickly return to the Standby screen, press (OK).

The order of redialing when the videophone call is not connected

Set Communication Speed*	Set Auto Redial by Voice (see p.89)	Dialing	Redialing		Set Communication Speed*	Set Auto Redial by Voice (see p.89)	Dialing	Redialing	
			First	Second				First	Second
64K	ON	64K	32K	Voice	32K	ON	32K	Voice	—
64K	OFF	64K	32K	—	32K	OFF	32K	—	—

* You can set from the submenu. Follow Step 1 in *Making a Videophone Call* (see p.73)

- When you make a videophone call to the terminal which does not support Videophone, or the other party's terminal is out of area or turned off, it cannot be connected. When you make a videophone call to the terminal which does not support Videophone and the Auto Redial by Voice is on (see p.89), the call is terminated before connected and redialed as a voice call. However, it may not operated if you make a call to the ISDN Videophone which does not support an ISDN synchronous 64K or PIAFS access point, 3G-324M (see p.72) (as of May 2004), or if you make a call to a wrong number. Note that the call charge may be added.
- The 32K Videophone communication function is provided for connecting a device such as a PHS terminal for which 64K videophone calls may be unavailable depending on the network condition. When you make a 64K videophone call, but the receiver is in a 32K communication environment, the Videophone call is automatically changed to a 32K videophone call and redialed.
 - * The digital communication charges at 32K and 64K are the same.
- When the call has been connected to a videophone call, Auto Redial by Voice is not performed.
- The call redialed by voice is charged not as a digital communication but as a voice call.

Note

- Do not cover the antenna with your hand, so your FOMA terminal will have better reception.
- When talking with the hands-free function set to on, be sure to keep your FOMA terminal from your ear. If not, a loss of hearing or ear damage may occur.
- If you make a phone call to "110 (police)", "119 (fire station/ambulance)", or "118 (coast guard)" with the Videophone, the call cannot be connected. Set the automatic voice call redialing (see p.89) to "ON" and the call will be tried again as a voice call and then connected.
- During a videophone call, you cannot make another voice or Videophone call. Alternatively, you cannot use any i-mode service, send or receive mail, send short message (SMS), and receive Message R/F. You cannot use packet communication and 64K data communications. (However, you can receive a Short Message (SMS).)
- The videophone call time is accumulated and displayed not as the voice call time, but as the digital call time (see p.135).
- Even if you use an alternate image for the videophone call and the call is made only with voice, not voice call charge but digital communication charge starts.
- Reception is unstable if you make or receive a call while moving. Due to the characteristics of digital communication, a call could be suddenly interrupted. Faint signals may prevent you making a call even if the "圏外" indicator is not displayed. It is recommended that you select a location with good reception (when you are indoors, preferably close to a window where the reception level is **T**).
- If the battery runs down during a call, you hear an alarm tone and your FOMA terminal is disconnected after about 20 seconds.
- When the battery is discharged and "充電してください (charge battery)" appears during a videophone call, your image or alternate image during a call are sent to the other party's terminal, and the call is continued.
- If a videophone call cannot be connected, a message indicating the reason appears on the screen. The displayed reason may differ from the actual conditions of the receiver depending on the type of phone the receiver uses or whether the receiver subscribes to the network service, however.

Displayed message	Reason
番号をご確認の上おかけ直し下さい Check the number and redial	An unused phone number is dialed.
お話中です Busy	The line is busy.
電波の届かない所にいるか電源が切れています The signal does not reach or power is off	The receiver's phone is in a place where the signal does not reach or turned off.
ドライブモード中です Drive Mode	The receiver's phone is in Drive Mode.
接続できませんでした Cannot be connected	This message appears for a reason other than the above.

- When the voice of video is failed to be sent or received during Videophone communication, the connection is not recovered automatically. Make a videophone call again.
- You can end your call or put it on hold by closing your FOMA terminal (see p.133).

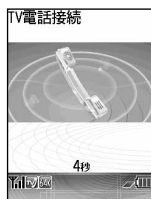
Receiving a Videophone Call





1 When a call is received, open your FOMA terminal.



- When a videophone call is received, “TV電話着信中” appears.
- If the call includes a Caller ID, the phone number appears. If there is no Caller ID, the reason there is no Caller ID is indicated (see p.128).
- If the caller’s phone number is saved in Phonebook and the name appears.
- In the Manner mode, your FOMA terminal vibrates to let you know that a call is received (see p.118).




2 Press () to take the call.



- Press  to answer a videophone call with an alternate image.
- You cannot answer a videophone call with pressing the any key answer function keys even if Any Key Answer is set. You can press  () to answer with your self image, press  to answer with an alternate image. (You cannot answer videophone calls with pressing other keys.)
- You can change a setting such as the screen display mode from the submenu during a videophone call (see p.78).


3 Press ().

The hands-free function is set and you can hear the caller’s voice in the speaker.

- To restore the hands-free function off, press  again (When the call ends, the hands-free function is restored to off).
- When a switch-equipped earphone/microphone (optional) is connected, the caller’s voice is heard in the earphone/microphone regardless of the hands-free setting.
- When the hands-free function is off, the caller’s voice is heard in the earpiece.
- To adjust the earpiece volume, use  to select the volume and press  (設定). Operating procedure: (see p.60)

4 To end the call, press .

The call time is displayed for about 5 seconds and the Standby screen reappears.

- To quickly return to the Standby screen, press  (OK).
- If you receive a videophone call from a caller not found in Phonebook (see p.57).

About settings when you cannot answer videophone calls

When a videophone call is received, you can select one of the following settings from the submenu:

Submenu	Handling method	Page
1. 応答保留 Answer hold	Puts the call on hold before answered.	p.62
3. 転送でんわ Forwarding*	Transfers the call to the forwarding phone number.	p.208
4. 着信拒否 Reject call	Rejects the call.	

* Requires a Call Forwarding Service subscription.

- The received videophone call is recorded in Call History (see p.58).

Display when a videophone call is received

- When a videophone call is received in standby, an image appears on the main display and the inspiration window (when closed) according to the following priority. When a voice or videophone call is received from third parties during another voice or videophone call, Chaku-motion does not appear even if it is set:

Priority order	Setting	Main display	Inspiration window
1	Chaku-motion is set	Chaku-motion	Reception images preset in the FOMA
2	Photo Call is set.	Images saved in Phonebook	Images saved in Phonebook
3	Partner is set.	Partner images	Reception images preset in the FOMA
4	No the above settings	Reception images preset in the FOMA	Reception images preset in the FOMA

- The caller's phone number, name which is saved in Phonebook, the Videophone call icon, and other items appear in the Inspiration window (when closed) (see p.30).
 - If there is no Caller ID, the reason there is no Caller ID appears (see p.128).
 - You can set your FOMA terminal to not display phone numbers or names (see p.151).
- You can set your FOMA terminal to not display the image saved in Phonebook (see p.148).
- In PIM Lock or when the phone number of the caller is stored in the Secret memory, the caller's name or image which is saved in Phonebook does not appear.

When a voice or videophone call is received during a videophone call

- To end the videophone call to answer the voice call, press . When you answer the videophone call press (TV), or . You can press (TV) to answer the call with your self image and press to answer the call with an alternate image. A prompt appears, select “する” and press (選択). Press to end the current call and display the call reception screen.
 - The image and the voice is being sent also during the prompt is displayed. You can tell the other party that you are ending a call, then answer a voice call.
- You can also select one of the following settings from the submenu:

Submenu	Handling method	Page
2. 留守番電話 Voice mail ¹	Connects the voice call to the Voice Mail Service Center (voice call only).	p.203
3. 転送でんわ Forwarding ²	Transfers the voice call to the forwarding phone number.	p.208
4. 着信拒否 Reject call	Rejects the voice call. The talking screen appears.	
5. 通話相手切断 Disconnect party	Disconnects the videophone call and answers the voice or videophone call.	

1 Requires a Voice Mail Service subscription. 2 Requires a Call Forwarding Service subscription.


When a videophone call is received during a voice call

- To end the current call and answer the videophone call, press (TV), or . You can press (TV) to answer the call with your self image and press to answer the call with alternate image. A prompt appears, select “する” and press (選択). Press to end the current call and display the call reception screen.
 - The voice is being sent during the prompt is displayed. You can tell the other party that you are ending a call, then answer a videophone call.
- You can also select one of the following settings from the submenu:

Submenu	Handling method	Page
3. 転送でんわ Call forwarding [*]	Transfers the videophone call to the forwarding phone number.	p.208
4. 着信拒否 Reject call	Rejects the videophone call. The talking screen appears.	—
5. 通話相手切断 Disconnect party	Ends the call and answers the videophone call.	—

^{*} Requires a Call Forwarding Service subscription.

Note

- Do not cover the antenna with your hand, so your FOMA terminal will have better reception.
- When talking with the hands-free function set to on, be sure to keep your FOMA terminal from your ear. If not, a loss of hearing or ear damage may occur.
- Even when Voice Mail Service is activated, Videophone calls are not connected to the Voice Mail Service Center. The videophone call is received.
- If the forwarding phone number is not for a device which supports 3G-324M (see p.72) Videophone/, any videophone call is not connected to the forwarding phone number even if Call Forwarding Service is activated. Before setting the forwarding phone number, check the terminal.
- However, if a videophone call is received from the phone number you registered to the Nuisance Call Blocking Service, the call is disconnected without playing the call rejection announcement (see p.216).
- The Videophone does not support Caller ID Display Request Service (see p.219).
- If another voice or videophone call arrives while you are talking with Videophone, select “5.通話相手切断” submenu (see p.76). This enables you to disconnect the current call and answer the second call.
- During a videophone call, you cannot make another voice or videophone call. Also you cannot use any i-mode service, send or receive mail, send Short Message (SMS), and receive Message R/Fs. (However, you can receive Short Message (SMS).) Mail and Message R/Fs are stored in the i-mode center and you can receive them using Check New Message (see “Application” p.140).
- You cannot answer a videophone call during i-mode communication (The videophone call reception screen does not appear and cannot answer even if a videophone call is received.The missed call item is recorded in Call History).
- If the battery runs down during a call, you hear an alarm tone and your FOMA terminal is disconnected after about 20 seconds.
- When the battery is discharged and the message “充電して下さい” (Recharge the battery)” appears during a videophone call, your image or alternate image during a call are sent to the other party’s terminal, and the call is continued.
- You can end the call or put it on hold by closing your FOMA terminal (see p.133).
- When a switch-equipped earphone/microphone is connected, you can send an alternate image to the other party when you answer a videophone call by pressing earphone/microphone switch (see p.190). When Auto Function is “する” (see p.191), you can answer a videophone call automatically with an alternate image after the shift time elapses. Switching between the alternate image and your self image (Mode Switching) (see p.85).
- When Manner Mode or Drive Mode is set, the terminal does not ring (see p.118, 62)
- Reception is unstable if you make or receive a call while moving. Due to the characteristics of digital communication, a videophone call could be suddenly interrupted. Faint signals may prevent you from receiving a call even if the “圏外” indicator is not displayed. It is recommended that you select location with good reception (when you are indoors, preferably close to a window where the reception level is ).

Useful Functions Available during a Videophone Call

[Select Sent Image]



Selecting a sent image

You can select a sent image during a videophone call.

- Set an alternate image (see p.87).

1 Press (TV) while your self image is being sent.

The alternate image is sent instead of your self image.

- The alternate image which is set in the Alternate Image setting is sent.
- If the alternate image is a Chara-den, it may take time to change the image.
- While the alternate image is being sent, press  ( TV) to change to send your self image.

Chara-den

Chara-den is avatars which can be sent to the other party instead of your self image during a videophone call. They move around by reacting to your voice. Alternatively, you can make the avatars move (action) by key operations.

- Switch Chara-den, Switch Action (see p.83, 84)
- Key operation, Action List (see p.84, 85)
- Download Chara-dens (see "Application" p.88)
- Chara-den Player (see "Application" p.88)
- Capture Chara-dens (see "Application" p.93)
- Manage Chara-dens (see "Application" p.95)

Operations available from the submenu during a videophone call

You can perform the following operations:

Submenu	Description	Page
01. 通話中保留 Call Hold	Put a call on hold while talking.	p.79
02. 代替静止画切替 Switch Alternate Still Image*	Change the image being sent to a still image.	p.79
03. キャラ電切替 Switch Chara-den*	Change the Chara-den.	p.83
04. 静止画メモ Still Image Memo*	Save the image being received as a still image.	p.80
05. 動画メモ Video Memo*	Save the image being received as a video.	p.80
06. 自画像調整 Adjust Self Image	Adjust the image being sent.	p.81
07. TV電話調節 Adjust Videophone Image	Change the displayed image and adjusts the image quality.	p.82
08. 画面標準 Standard Screen	Display the other party's image in the standard (enlargement) mode.	p.83
08. 画面拡大 Enlarge Screen		
09. LCD切替 Switch LCD	Display the Videophone screen in the Inspiration window.	p.83
10. アクション切替 Switch Action	Change the Chara-den Action mode.	p.84
11. アクション一覧 Action List	Display the Chara-den Action List and select an action.	p.85
12. ダイヤル送出 Dial Sending	Select dialing or action input to be performed when numeric keys are pressed during a videophone call (with using Chara-den).	p.84
12. アクション入力 Action Input		
13. モード切替 Mode Switching	Change the image to be sent.	p.85
14. 自局番号 Own Number*	Display your own phone number.	-

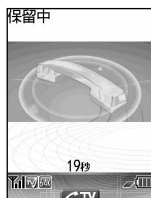
*You cannot select when PIN Lock is set.


[Call Hold]

Putting a call on hold while talking

- If you preset Close Operation to “保留”, you can put a call on hold while talking by closing your FOMA terminal (see p.133).
- Even during on hold, the call cost will be charged.
- You can put a call on hold before answering it (Answer Hold) (see p.62).
- The received voice or videophone call during a call or on hold is recorded as a missed call in Call History.


1 During a videophone call, select “01.通話中保留” from the submenu.



- To the other party, the hold message or hold melody sounds and the image on which “保留中” is superimposed is sent. To change the hold message or hold melody (see p.132).
- The call is disconnected when  is pressed or when the other party ends the call during a call on hold.

2 Press  ( TV) when you are ready to answer the call.

On hold is canceled and back to a call.

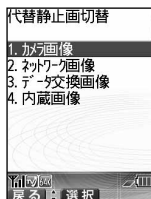
- When you press , an alternate image is sent.
- If the alternate image is a Chara-den, it may take time to change the image.
- Even if the Any Key Answer setting is set to “する”, you cannot answer the call by pressing the Any Key Answer function Key.

[Switch to Alternate Still Image]

Switching a sending image to a still image

- This function is available only during a videophone call. The setting is not saved.

1 During a videophone call, select “02.代替静止画切替” from the submenu.

2 Select a type of image and press  (選択).

The folder list appears.

- Folders set in the Secret setting do not appear.
- The picture list or title list appears when you select “4.内蔵画像” (see “Application” p.226). Proceed to Step 4.

3 Select a folder and press  (選択).

The picture list or title list appears (see “Application” p.226).

4 Select an image and press (詳細).

- The following images cannot be set:
 - Flash movie
 - Still image with a size larger than 176 x 144 dots
 - Video/i-motion
 - Images saved in the Secret setting folders
 - Animation
- Image and animation whose use is fixed to a specific screen, such as an image for the Standby screen only
- Images, in “ネットワーク画像”, that is restricted to be attached to mail or output from the FOMA terminal

5 Press (選択).

[Still Image Memo]

Saving a receiving image as a still image

- You can use this function when the FOMA terminal is opened (You cannot use when switching LCD).
- This function is not available when the maximum number of saved images is reached or memory is full.
- The still image memo is saved as follows. Maximum number of saved images and displaying them (see “Application” p.13, 224):

Storage location	“マルチメディア” “イメージ” “TV電話画像” “TV電話フォルダ”
File name	PTV_XXXX (XXXX: 4-digit number)
Image size	176 x 144 dots

1 During a videophone call, select “04.静止画メモ” from the submenu.



2 Press (撮影) or (SideC).

- The receiving image is saved as a still image.
- While the still image is saved, “録画中 (Recording)” is sent to the other party.
- When the number of remaining images reaches 0 after taking a image, you cannot execute Still Image Memo any longer.

3 Press (戻る).

Still Image Memo is ended.

[Video Memo]

Saving receiving images as video

- Maximum time per video recording: About 1 minute
- You can use this function when the FOMA terminal is opened (You cannot use when switching LCD).
- This function is not available when the maximum number of saved images is reached or memory is full.
- The video memo is saved as follows. Maximum number of saved images and displaying them (see “Application” p.13, 246):

Storage location	“マルチメディア” “i モーション” “TV電話画像” “TV電話フォルダ”
File name	MTV_XXXX (XXXX: 4-digit number)
Image size	176 x 144 dots

1 During a videophone call, select “05.動画メモ” from the submenu.



2 Press (撮影) or (SideC).

Receiving images are saved as a video clip.

- While the images are saved, “録画中 (Recording)” is sent to the other party.
- If the call is disconnected or ended during recording, when the number of remaining images reaches 0, the video and voice recorded until then are saved.

3 Press (停止) or (SideC).

Recording ends and the video is saved.

Note

- Regardless of close operation settings, the recording terminates when you close the FOMA terminal while recording is in progress. Note that no video may be saved if you close the FOMA terminal during recording (about 3 seconds or less after started recording).
- If the key operations are performed during recording, keypad sounds may be recorded.

[Adjust Self Image]

Adjusting sending images

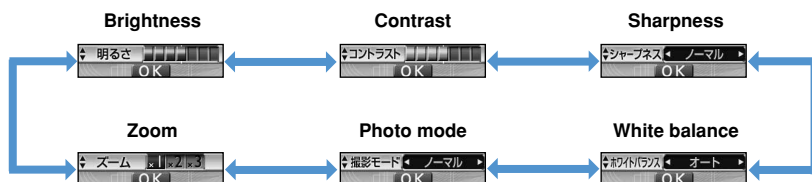
You can adjust the brightness and contrast of your self image.


- This function is only available during a videophone call. The setting is not saved.
- Adjusting your self image does not affect an alternate image.

1 During a videophone call, select “06.自画像調節” from the submenu.

2 Use to select a setting item.

- Each time is pressed, the setting item switches.
- The following screens are set by default:



3 Use  to select a level or setting.

- The zoom ratio can be changed from 1x to 2x and 3x.
- For setting (see “Application” p.212).

4 Press  (OK).

[Adjust Videophone Image]

Switching of image display and adjusting image quality



Make selection for the display procedure of the image of other party and your self image or the quality of your self image to be sent to the other party.

- The Image Display setting is saved as the Image Display setting of Videophone Call setting. The Image Quality setting is not saved.

1 During a videophone call, select “07.TV電話調節” from the submenu.

A screen asking for Image Display settings appears. The current setting appears.

2 Use  to switch the Image Display setting.

- Each time you press , the setting switches.
- Press  (OK) when you do not set the image quality. The Image Display setting is set.

Parent screen: Image of other party
Child screen: Your image



Parent screen: Your image
Child screen: Image of other party



Your image only

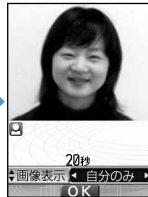



Image of other party only



3 Press .

A screen asking for Image Quality settings appears. The current setting appears.

- Each time you press , the image display switches between the Screen Display setting and Image Quality setting.

4 Use  to set the image quality.

- Each time you press , the setting switches.

Movement preceded



Standard



Image quality preceded



5 Press  (OK).

Adjust Videophone Image is set.

Enlarging the image of the other party

You can enlarge the image of the other party without changing the aspect ratio.

- This setting are saved as the Change Videophone Screen setting value of in the Videophone setting.

Example The image of the other party is enlarged.

1 During a videophone call, select “08.画面拡大” from the submenu.

- To change the enlarged image to the standard image, select “08.画面標準”.

[Switch LCD]

Displaying the Videophone call screen in the Inspiration window

If you switch LCD, you can send the image of the view while checking at the Inspiration window.

- This function is available when the FOMA terminal is opened.
- This function is available only during a videophone call. The setting is not saved.
- If you switch LCD, the functions available during a videophone call cannot be executed.

1 During a videophone call, select “09.LCD切替” from the submenu.

- Alternatively, press \odot (Rear key) to switch the screen.
- The screen appears in the display format of the most recent setting of Adjust Videophone Image (see p.82) or image display setting (see p.90).

For “parent screen=image of other party, child screen=your image”, the image of other party appears at the top and your image appears at the bottom. For “parent screen=your image, child screen=image of other party”, the image of other party appears at the bottom and your image appears at the top.

**Top: Image of other party
Bottom: Your image**



**Top: Your image
Bottom: Image of other party**



Your image only



Image of other party only



[Switch Chara-den]

Switching Chara-den

- This function is available only during a videophone call. The setting is not saved.

1 During a videophone call, select “03.キャラ電切替” from the submenu.



2 Select a Chara-den and press \odot (選択).

The talking screen reappears.

- Switching of Chara-den may cause time delays.

[Select Dial Sending/Action Input]

[Default] アクション入力 Action Input

Switching between Dial Sending and Action Input during a videophone call

Select whether to set Dial Sending or Action Input when the numeric key is pressed during a videophone call (when Chara-den is used).

- You can switch the function when a Chara-den is set for the Alternate Image setting.

1 During a videophone call, select “12.ダイヤル送出” or “12.アクション入力” from the submenu.

- Dial Sending: You can send touch tones during a videophone call.
- Action Input: You can operate Chara-den during a videophone call.

[Switch Actions]

[Default] 全体モード Full mode

Switching the Action mode of Chara-den

- You can switch the Action mode when a Chara-den is set for the Alternate Image setting.
- For details about the total action and partial action of each Char-den (see “Application” manual p.91).

1 During a videophone call, press to switch the Action mode (the full mode and parts mode).

- Alternatively, you can select “10.アクション切替” from the submenu to switch the Action mode.
- “全体モード (Full mode)”: Action indicated by the entire of a character image such as “喜ぶ (be pleased)” and “泣く (cry)”.
- “パーツモード (Parts mode)”: Action for moving each part of a character image closely.
- When the full mode is set as the Action mode, it is switched to the parts mode, when the parts mode is set as the Action mode, it is switched to the full mode.

Operating Chara-den images by pressing the numeric keys

When selecting a Chara-den as your self image, you can operate the Chara-den image.

- This function is only available when “アクション入力” is set in select Dial Sending/Action Input.
- You cannot operate when switching LCD.

1 Press the numeric keys.

The Chara-den image moves.

- The movement of the Chara-den image varies, depending on whether the action switching is set to the full mode or parts mode.
- When the Dial Sending mode is set, pressing the numeric keys sends the touch tones.

Note

- Alternatively, you can select action from the action list to operate the image.

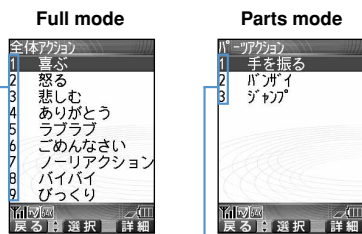
[Action List]

Displaying the Chara-den action list



You can operate a sending Chara-den.

- You can use this function when a Chara-den is set for the Alternate Image setting.
- Some Chara-dens may not be displayed.
- The function is only available during a videophone call. The setting is not saved.
- Chara-den action provided by default (see “Application” p.91).

1 During a videophone call, press .



The action list for the current action mode appears.

- Alternatively, you can select “11.アクション一覧” from the submenu.
- The displayed action list varies depending on whether Switch Action is set to the full mode or parts mode.
- You can view the entire title of the action by pressing  (詳細). Press  (OK) to return to the Action list.

The keys used for executing the actions
The keys are enabled when displaying a
Chara-den. Nothing will happen even if
you press the keys in this screen.

2 Select action and press (選択).

The Chara-den image moves according to the selected action. The image is also transferred to the other party.

- When selecting “相手画像” for the Image Display setting, you cannot display the Chara-den image movement.

[Mode Switching]

Switching images to be sent

1 During a videophone call, select “13.モード切替” from the submenu.

2 Select “1.自画像送信 (send self image)”, “2.静止画像送信 (send still image)” or “3.キャラ電送信 (send Chara-den)” and press .

- You cannot select the current mode.

Changing the Videophone Call Setting

You can set the following settings for a videophone call:

Setup	Description	Page
発信時自画像送信 Send Self Image	You can set whether to send your self image.	—
代替画像設定* Set Alternate Image	You can set an image to be sent to the other party.	p.87
音声自動再発信設定 Set Auto Redial by Voice	When a videophone call is not connected, you can set if redial a call by voice.	p.89
応答保留画面選択* Select Answer Hold Screen	You can change the image to be sent during answer holding.	p.89
通話保留画面選択* Select Call Hold Screen	You can change the image to be sent during hold while speaking.	p.90
伝言メモ画面選択* Select Record Message Screen	You can change the image to be sent during answering by Record Message.	p.90
画像表示設定 Set Image Display	You can set how to display your self image and the image of the other party.	p.90
TV電話画面切替 Change Videophone Screen	You can change the image size during a videophone call.	p.91
画像品質設定 Set Image Quality	You can set which is preceded, the quality or movement of an image during a videophone call.	p.91

*This function cannot be used while PIM Lock is set.

[Send Self Image]


[Default] ON

Setting whether to send your self image

Set whether to send your self image to the other party when you make a videophone call.

- This setting is available during an outgoing call.

1 In standby, select “設定” “TV電話” “発信時自画像送信” from Menu.

2 Select “1.ON” and press  (選択).

Send Self Image is set.

- To cancel the setting, select “2.OFF”.

Note

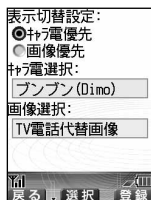
- You can select on/off of Send Self Image from the submenu while or after entering a phone number (see p.73).
- The image set in the Alternate Image setting is sent to the other party while Send Self Image is off.

Setting images to be sent to the other party

Select an image to be sent to the other party instead of your self image when Send Self Image during a videophone call is off.

Sending Chara-den

1 In standby, select “設定” “TV電話” “代替画像設定” from Menu.



- The default setting is displayed on the screen.

2 Select for “キャラ電優先” and press (選択).
 becomes .

3 Select the “キャラ電選択” field and press (選択).



4 Select a Chara-den and press (詳細).



©BIVIG

- You can select “1.アクション切替”, “2.アクション一覧”, “3.拡大表示ON / 拡大表示OFF”, and “4.情報表示” from the submenu (see “Application” p.89, 91).
- Each press of switches the Action mode.
- Press to display the Action List.

5 Press (選択).

6 Press (登録).

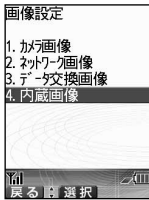
The Chara-den is set as the alternate image.

Sending images

1 In standby, select “設定” “TV電話” “代替画像設定” from Menu.

2 Select for “画像優先” and press (選択).
 becomes .

3 Select “画像選択” field and press (選択).



4 Select a type of image and press (選択).
 The still image appears.

5 Select an image and press (選択).

- The following images cannot be set:
 - Flash image
 - Video/i-motion
 - Animation
- Still image with a size larger than 176 × 144 dots
- Images saved in the Secret setting folders
- Image and animation whose use is fixed to a specific screen, such as an image for the Standby screen only
- Images, in “ネットワーク画像”, that is restricted to be attached to mail or output from the FOMA terminal

To select an image from the folder

① Select “1.一覧表示” from the submenu.

The folder list appears.

- The Secret setting folders are not displayed.

② Select a folder and press (選択).

The picture list or title list appears (see “Application” p.226).

③ Select an image and press (詳細).


④ Press (選択).

6 Press (登録).
 Alternate Image is set.

Making a call by voice when a videophone call is not connected

You can redial a call by voice automatically if you call a non-videophone or if a videophone call is not connected.

1 In standby, select “設定” “TV電話” “音声自動再発信設定” from Menu.

2 Select “1.ON” and press  (選択).

Auto Redial by Voice is set.

- To cancel the setting, select “2.OFF”.

Note

- When you make a videophone call to the phone which does not support Videophone, the other party's phone is out of area or turned off, it cannot be connected. When you make a voice phone call to the phone which does not support Videophone and Auto Redial by Voice is “ON”, the call is terminated before connected and redialed as a voice phone call. However, it may not be operated if you make a call to the ISDN Videophone which does not support an ISDN synchronous 64K or PIAFS access point, 3G-324M (see p.72) (as of May 2004), or if you make a call to a wrong number. Note that the call may be charged.
- Auto redial by voice is not performed in the following cases:
 - The other party sets Drive Mode.
 - The other party is busy.
 - You make a call to a phone number not being used.
 - The other party is in a location where signals do not reach or the other party turns power off.
 - The call is connected to Videophone.
- A call redialed by voice while Auto Redial by Voice is set to “ON” is charged not as a digital communication but as a voice call.

Change images to be sent to the other party during answer hold

When a call is on Answer Hold, the set image and “応答保留中 (Answer on hold)” is sent to the other party.

1 In standby, select “設定” “TV電話” “応答保留画面選択” from Menu.

2 Select a type of screen and press  (選択).

The still image appears.


- Follow Step 5 in *Setting images to be sent to the other party* (see p.88).

[Select Call Hold Screen]

[Default] 内蔵画像 Preset image

Changing the image to be sent during Call Hold

When a call is on hold while speaking, the set image and “保留中 (on hold)” are sent to the other party.


- 1 In standby, select “設定” “TV電話” “通話保留画面選択” from Menu.
- 2 Select a type of image and press  (選択).
The still image appears.
 - Follow Step 5 in *Setting images to be sent to the other party* (see p.88).

[Select Record Message Screen]

[Default] 内蔵画像 Preset image

Changing images to be sent to the other party during answering by Record Message

When a call is answered by Record Message or Quick Record Message, the set image and “伝言メモ (Record Message)” is sent to the caller.

- 1 In standby, select “設定” “TV電話” “伝言メモ画面選択” from Menu.
- 2 Select a type of image and press  (選択).
The still image appears.
 - Follow Step 5 in *Setting images to be sent to the other party* (see p.88).

[Set Image Display]


[Default] 両方 Both images

Set display method of both other party image and your image

Select the display method of the image of the other party and your image during a videophone call.

- 1 In standby, select “設定” “TV電話” “画像表示設定” from Menu.
- 2 Select “1.相手画像 (Other party image)”, “2.自画像 (your self image)”, or “3.両方 (Both image)” and press  (選択).

Image Display is set .

- You can switch the image of the other party and your image by pressing  when selecting “3.両方”.

Other party's image




Your self image



Both images (Parent screen: Other party's image
Child screen: Your self image)



Changing the size of image during a videophone call

- 1 In standby, select “設定” “TV電話” “TV電話画面切替” from Menu.
- 2 Select “1.標準 (Standard)” or “2.拡大 (Enlargement)” and press  (選択).
Change Videophone Screen is set.


Setting the Image quality

You can set the quality of the image to be sent to the other party.

- 1 In standby, select “設定” “TV電話” “画像品質設定” from Menu.



- When the image has movement, set “動き優先 (precede movement)” and when it has little movement, set “画質優先 (precede quality)” to use your Videophone more effectively.

- 2 Select a image quality and press  (選択).
The image quality is preceded.

Phonebooks Usable for the FOMA Terminal

With the FOMA D900i, you can use the FOMA Built-in Phonebook and FOMA Card Phonebook.

Differences between the FOMA Built-in Phonebook and FOMA Card Phonebook

Item		FOMA Built-in Phonebook	FOMA Card Phonebook
Number of entries that can be saved		700 max. in Phonebook	50 max. in Phonebook
Registered contents	Name and reading	You can set a name, separating it into a family name and a personal name.	You can set a name, not separating it into a family name and a personal name.
	Phone number and icon	You can set up to 3 phone numbers per person. However, Phonebook itself can contain up to a maximum total of 700 phone numbers. You can set an icon for each number.	You can set only one phone number per person. You can not set icon.
	Mail address	You can set up to 3 mail addresses per person. However, Phonebook itself can contain up to a maximum total of 700 mail addresses.	You can set only one mail address per person.
	group	You can select from group 00 to 09.	You can select from group 00 to 10.
	Memory number	YES	NO
	image	YES*	NO
	Secret code setting destination	YES	NO
	Secret memory registration	YES	NO
	Personal memo	YES	NO
	Phonebook Search	Reading Search	YES
Column Search		YES	YES
Memory No. Search		YES	NO
Phone No. Search		YES	YES
Group Search		YES	NO
FOMA Card Group Search		NO	YES
Secret Search		YES	NO
Other			
	One-press Dialing/ Two-press Dialing	YES	NO

* You can set one image for each of the 700 entries. However, the actual number of images that can be saved depends on the number of images that can be saved in the FOMA terminal. The maximum number of images that can be saved in the FOMA terminal may be less than 700 depending on the image size, compression mode used and the number of melodies or applications saved in the FOMA terminal.

About the name display

Registration in the FOMA Built-in Phonebook and FOMA Card Phonebook causes the following:

- The name appears on the following screens when the phone number or mail address matches a phonebook entry:
 - Screen displayed when dialing¹
 - Call reception screen^{1, 2}
 - Redial Data
 - Call History²
 - Received mail list
 - Sent/unsent mail list
- 1 Appears also on the Inspiration window.
- 2 Appears only when the other party includes a Caller ID.
- Phone numbers that are saved with a 186 (* 31#) or 184 (#31#) will still display the name if a call is received the caller phone number. The name is also displayed in Redial Data if the number including the 186 (* 31#) or 184 (#31#) completely matches a phone number saved in Phonebook.
- If a mail address is saved by omitting the portion after the @ sign of the mail address, even when you receive mail, the name does not appear in the received mail list. The name appears only when the mail address completely matches a mail address saved in Phonebook.
- In the following cases the name does not appear even when the phone number or mail address matches:
 - When PIM Lock is set.
 - When the other party is stored in the Secret memory.
- If a call of a phone number or a mail of an address registered in both the FOMA Built-in Phonebook and the FOMA Card Phonebook is received, the name saved in the FOMA Built-in Phonebook is displayed. However, when the party saved in the FOMA Built-in Phonebook is stored in the Secret memory, the name saved in the FOMA Card Phonebook is displayed.

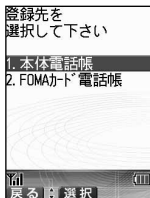
Note

- Saved data is retained in memory for about one month when the battery is removed or depleted but may be lost after that. Since data may also be lost due to failure of the FOMA terminal, repair or other handling procedures, it is recommended that you maintain the data in another form. NTT DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of saved data. You can save the data using *Memory Stick Duo* or the designated data link software (see "Application" p.284, 339)
- You can copy the name, reading, phone number 1, mail address 1, group name, the setting of the Secret memory and the contents of bookmarks to a new phone at any NTT DoCoMo service center. Note that depending on the specifications of a new phone you may not be able to copy data stored in the FOMA terminal.
- You can copy Phonebook to *Memory Stick Duo* for storage. You can save the name, phone numbers 1 to 3, mail addresses 1 to 3 and memory number in it (see "Application" p.285). Since images are saved in the FOMA terminal separately from Phonebook, when you copy Phonebook to *Memory Stick Duo*, the images are not copied.

Saving Entries in the FOMA Built-in Phonebook

- Maximum number of entries that can be saved (see p.92)
- You cannot register entries when PIM Lock or Keydial Lock is set. Cancel these settings before saving data.
- Pictographs saved in a name or personal memo are not displayed correctly when they are copied to the FOMA Card Phonebook or transferred to memory.

1 In standby or during a call, press and hold down (電話帳).



- Alternatively, you can select “でんわ” “電話帳登録” from Menu in standby.

2 Select “1.本体電話帳” and press (選択).

The Phonebook Entry screen appears.

- You have to enter a family name or personal name.
- You can set them in any order.

Enter a name, separating it into a family name and personal name.

The Japanese reading of the name is automatically entered as the name is entered.

Enter a phone number and select an icon.

Enter a mail address.

Classify phonebook entries into one of 10 groups.

The lowest free memory number is automatically allocated.

You can specify an image to be displayed in the call reception screen.

If entered, a Secret code is automatically attached to the mail address.

Select a mail address to which the Secret code is to be attached.



Set to “する” when you do not want to expose the saved contents to others.

Enter addresses and other information.

3 Enter a name.

Enter a name, separating it into a family name and personal name. Enter the family name or personal name.

- Up to 32 single-byte or 16 double-byte characters for the name including the family name and personal name can be entered.




- ① Select the “姓” field and press  (選択).
- ② Enter a family name.
- ③ Select the “名” field and press  (選択).
- ④ Enter a personal name.

4 Check the reading.


The reading for the name is automatically entered.

During name entry, if you converted to Kanji from an incorrect reading for the purpose of entering the desired Kanji, or if you reentered the name, the correct reading is not entered. In this case, correct the reading of them.

- Up to 32 single-byte Katakana, alphanumeric characters, symbols and spaces for the name including the family and personal name can be entered.

- ① Select the “姓フリガナ” field and press  (選択).
- ② Press  to delete unnecessary characters and enter the correct reading.
- ③ Select the “名フリガナ” field and press  (選択).
- ④ Repeat Step ②.


5 Enter a phone number.

- ① Select the “電話番号1” “電話番号2” or “電話番号3” field and press  (選択).
- ② Enter a phone number.

- Enter a phone number starting with the area code. (Up to 26 digits, including pauses can be entered). You cannot enter “-”.
- You can save and dial information numbers starting with “#”.


To enter a pause (P)

The pause (P) is used for saving dial operations such as reserving tickets (Using the pause function (see p.53)).






- ① Press  where a pause (stop) is to be entered.
 - If you enter a pause at the beginning of a phone number, you cannot dial.
 - You can enter a series of pauses.
 - One pause occurs for each inserted pause.
 - A pause entered at the end of a phone number is invalid.

To enter a subaddress



- You need to set the Subaddress setting on (see p.129).

- ① Enter a phone number and press .
- ② Enter a subaddress.

10 Set an image.

- The following images cannot be saved:
 - Flash images • Animations • Video/i-motion clips • Chara-dens
 - Still images whose size is larger than 176 × 144 dots
 - Images saved to the Secret setting folder
 - Image whose use is fixed to a specific screen, such as an image for the Standby screen only
 - When an image is deleted from the FOMA terminal, the image set in Phonebook is also deleted.
- ① Select the “画像” field and press  (選択).
 - ② Select “1.カメラ画像”, “2.ネットワーク画像”, “3.データ交換画像” or “4.TV電話画像” and press  (選択).
 - ③ Select a folder and press  (選択)
A picture list or title list of images that can be saved appears (see “Application” p.226).
 - ④ Select an image and press  (詳細).
 - ⑤ Press  (選択).






To delete an image

- ① Select the “画像” field and press  (選択).
- ② Select “5.解除” and press  (選択).



11 Register and set a Secret code.

- Secret codes can only be set when the mail address of the other party is a phone number.
- If the other party does not use a Secret code, set no Secret code.
 - If you register a mail address to Phonebook as “phone number + Secret code@docomo.ne.jp”, in case you register a Secret code, you cannot send or reply mail to the address. Change to “phone number@docomo.ne.jp” and register a Secret code.

To enter a Secret code

- ① Select the “シークレットコード” field and press  (選択).
 - When correcting a previous saved Secret code, enter your terminal ID number and press  (選択).
- ② Use   to enter a 4-digit Secret code and press  (確定).
 - The entered numeric characters become “✖” when they are fixed.

To add a Secret code

- ① Select the “設定先” field and press  (選択).
- ② Select a mail address and press  (選択).
 - To add no Secret code, select “なし”.
 - If the other party deletes the Secret code by resetting or changing the mail address, be sure to set “なし”.
 - Only one Secret code can be entered even if more than one mail address are saved.
 - Even if you have set to add a Secret code, it is not displayed in the “宛先” field while mail is composed.

12 Select for next to “する” or “しない” for the Secret memory registration and press (選択).

The selected item changes to .

- “しない” is preset when a new entry is saved.
- To search a party stored in the Secret memory, perform Secret Search (You cannot search the party by the ordinary Phonebook Search operation) (see p.114).

13 Enter a personal memo.

① Select the “パーソナルメモ” field and press (選択).

② Enter a personal memo.

- Up to 50 single-byte or 25 double-byte characters can be entered.

14 Press (登録).

The phonebook entry is saved.

- When multiple phone numbers or mail addresses are entered and entry fields are left without an entry, the number of the entry field is later automatically moved up.

In this way, if entries are made in the “電話番号1” and “電話番号3” fields, the “電話番号3” field later becomes the “電話番号2” field automatically.

When you select a saved Memory number

A prompt appears asking whether you want to overwrite the existing number.

① Select “はい” and press (選択) to overwrite.

- To cancel overwriting, select “いいえ” and save the entry in another Memory number.
- The following Phonebook entries cannot be overwritten.
 - Phonebook entries stored in the Secret memory
 - Phonebook entries specified for Accept Calls/Reject Calls (when Accept Calls/Reject Calls is set to “する”)

Various saving methods

- You can also save data in Phonebook in the following screens:
 - Redial Data list (see p.50) • Call History (see p.58) • Phonebook Search results screen (see p.106)
 - A prompt that appears after a call from a party who is not saved in Phonebook (If “電話帳” is on in Assist Partner) (see p.160)
 - During a site that includes a phone number or mail address, sent/received mail and message are displayed (see “Application” p.47, 143)
 - The execution screen of i- ppli (see “Application” p.65)
 - Telop after playingback video/i-motion (see “Application” p.99, 247)
 - Read result of Barcode Reader (see “Application” p.220)
 - Received mail list or received mail display screen (see “Application” p.143)
- You can also save data in the Phonebook by entering a phone number in standby or during a call and selecting “1.登録” from the submenu.

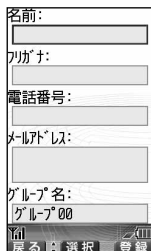
Saving Entries in the FOMA Card Phonebook

- Maximum number of entries that can be saved (see p.92).
- You cannot save entries when PIM Lock or Keydial Lock is set. Cancel these settings before attempting to save data.
- You cannot save pictographs in the FOMA Card Phonebook.

1 In standby, press and hold down (電話帳).

- Alternatively, you can select “でんわ” “電話帳登録” from Menu in standby.

2 Select “2.FOMAカード電話帳” and press (選択).




The entry screen appears.

- You have to enter a name.
- You can set them in any order.

3 Enter a name.

Enter a name, not separating it into the family name and personal name.

① Select the “名前” field and press  (選択).


② Enter a name.

- Maximum number of characters registered depends on the characters to be entered. However, single-byte Katakana cannot be entered.

Characters to be entered	Maximum number of characters registered
Only double-byte characters, double-byte and single-byte characters are mixed, single-byte characters and “ ` ” are mixed, single-byte spaces and single-byte alphanumeric characters are mixed	Up to 10 characters regardless of whether single-byte or double-byte characters are used.
Single-byte characters only	Up to 21 single-byte characters

4 Check the reading.

The Japanese reading for the name is automatically entered.

① To correct the reading select the “フリガナ” field and press  (選択).

② Enter the reading.

- Double-byte Katakana, single-byte alphanumeric characters, symbols and spaces can be entered. Maximum number of characters registered depends on the characters to be entered.

Characters to be entered	Maximum number of characters registered
Only double-byte characters, double-byte and single-byte characters are mixed, single-byte characters and “ ` ” are mixed, single-byte spaces and single-byte alphanumeric characters are mixed	Up to 12 characters regardless of whether single-byte or double-byte characters are used.
Single-byte characters only	Up to 25 single-byte characters


5 Enter a phone number.

You can set only 1 phone number. You cannot set icon.

- ① Select the “電話番号” field and press  (選択).
- ② Enter a telephone number.
 - Follow ② of Step 5 in *Saving Entries in the FOMA Built-in Phonebook* (see p.95).

6 Enter a mail address.

You can set only 1 mail address.

- ① Select the “メールアドレス” field and press  (選択).
- ② Enter the mail address.
 - Symbol “`” can be entered, but cannot be registered.
 - Follow ② of Step 7 in *Saving Entries in the FOMA Built-in Phonebook* (see p.96).

7 Select a group.

Entries for which no Group setting is selected are saved in Group 00.

- You can change the group names of Groups 01 to 10 (You cannot change Group 00.) (see p.105).
- ① Select the “グループ名” field and press  (選択).
 - ② Select a group and press  (選択).

8 Press (登録).

The FOMA Card Phonebook entry is saved.

Note

- Various sorting methods (see p.98)

Changing a Group Name

You can change a group name in Phonebook.

- You can set a ringtone and color for each group saved in the FOMA Built-in Phonebook. You can also select a combination for the Group settings from preset patterns.
- You can change only the group name of a group in the FOMA Card Phonebook (see p.105).

Changing group names in the FOMA Built-in Phonebook

You can set the following items for each group in the FOMA Built-in Phonebook:

Setting item	Default	Description
グループ名 Group name	グループ01～09 Groups 01 to 09	You can set group names for Groups 01 to 09 (However, you cannot change the name for Group 00)
着メーション / 着信音 Chaku-motion/ringtone	音の設定に連動 ^(注1) Link to Sound setting ¹	You can set by which a call or a videophone call from a party registered in a group is indicated, a ringtone or video. You can also set video to be displayed or a sounding ringtone.
着メーション Chaku-motion	-	
着信音 Ringtone	パターン1 Pattern 1	
TV電話着メーション / TV電話着信音 Videophone Chaku-motion/ Videophone call ringtone	音の設定に連動 ^(注1) Link to Sound setting ¹	
TV電話着メーション Videophone Chaku-motion	-	
TV電話着信音 Videophone call ringtone	パターン2 Pattern 2	You can set the ringtone and mail tone time that announces a mail from a party registered in a group.
メール着信音 Mail ringtone	音の設定に連動 Link to Sound setting ¹	
メール鳴動時間 Mail tone time	10秒 10 seconds ²	
色 Color	色指定なし No color specified	You can select one of 10 colors for the background of the call reception screen. ³

1 The settings for “着メーション / 着信音”, “TV電話着メーション / TV電話着信音”, and “メール着信音” in the Sound settings are used.

2 When “メール着信音” is set for “音の設定に連動”, the ringtone sounds for the same period of time set for “メール鳴動時間” of the Sound setting.

3 The colors are used for the following:

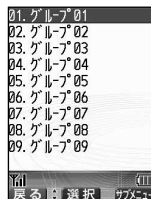
- Background of call reception screen
- Color of characters or highlighting used in Redial Data and Call History, and sent/received mail list
- Color of characters or highlighting used in the Group Search screen and Phonebook Search results screen

1 In standby, select “でんわ” “グループ別設定” from Menu.

- Alternatively, you can select “設定” “プライバシー” “グループ別設定” from Menu in standby.

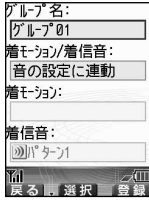
2 Enter your terminal ID number and press (選択).

3 Select “1.本体電話帳” and press (選択).





The group list appears.



4 Select a group and press (選択).



5 Enter a group name.

- ① Select the “グループ名” field and press  (選択).
- ② Press  to delete unnecessary characters and enter the group name.
 - Up to 21 single-byte or 10 double-byte characters can be entered.
 - You cannot register a group name that does not contain any characters.

6 Set the action to be taken when a call is received.

- ① Select the “着メーション / 着信音” field and press  (選択).
- ② Select the “着メーション” “着信音” or “音の設定に連動” and press  (選択).
 - Follow Step 3 in *Changing Chaku-motion or ringtones of a voice or videophone call* (see p.140).

7 Set the action to be taken when a videophone call is received.

- Follow Step 6.



8 Set a mail ringtone.

- Follow Step 3 in *Changing Chaku-motion or ringtones of a voice or videophone call* (To set a ringtone) (see p.141).

9 Set a mail tone time.

- Follow Step 3 in *Changing a ringtone or mail tone time of mail and Message R/F* (see p.142).

10 Set a group color.

- ① Select the “色” field and press  (選択).
- ② Select a color and press  (選択).


11 Press (登録).


The Group setting is saved.

Setting by selecting a combination from patterns

Combinations for the Group settings can be made from the following 9 preset patterns. Items in selected patterns can be changed later:

Pattern	Group Name	Ringtone/Videophone ringtone	Mail ringtone	Mail tone time (second)	Color
1	ステディA Steady A	ジムノペディ第1番 1ere Gymnopedie	カノン Canon	10	Red
2	ステディB Steady B	さくら Sakura	鳥唄 Shimauta	10	Red
3	家族・親戚A Family A	おもちゃの兵隊のマーチ(「キューピー3分クッキング」のテーマ) Parade of the wooden soldiers (Kewpie 3 min cooking theme)	森のくまさん The Bear	10	Orange
4	家族・親戚B Family B	電話・メロディ B Phone melody B	メール・メロディB Mail melody B	10	Orange
5	友達A Friend A	凱旋行進曲 Triumphal March	主よ人の望みの喜びを Jesus, Joy of Man's Desiring	10	Green
6	友達B Friend B	電話・黒電話 Phone retro	メール・英語ボイス Mail English	10	Green
7	友達C Friend C	発車メロディ 車掌DJmix Train melody conductor DJ mix	メール・SuperBell™Z Mail SuperBell™Z	10	Pink
8	仕事・バイトA Work/part time A	電話・女性ボイス Phone female	メール・女性ボイス Mail female	10	Blue
9	仕事・バイトB Work/part time B	電話・メロディA Phone melody A	メール・メロディA Mail melody A	10	Blue

 Recording license No.: T-0300330

 License No.: 0001354JRCL

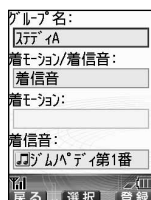
1 Display a group list of the FOMA Built-in Phonebook.

- Follow Steps 1 - 3 in *Changing group names in the FOMA Built-in Phonebook* (see p.101)

2 Select a group, and select “1.パターン選択” from the submenu.

The pattern list appears.

3 Select a pattern and press (選択).



The pattern item is entered.

To change pattern items

- Follow Steps 4 - 10 in *Changing group names in the FOMA Built-in Phonebook* (see p.102)

4 Press (登録).

The Group setting is saved.

Resetting Group settings to their defaults by Group

- 1 **Display the Group list of the FOMA Built-in Phonebook.**
 - Follow Steps 1 - 3 in *Changing group names in the FOMA Built-in Phonebook* (see p.101)
- 2 **Select a Group, and select “2.グループ内リセット” from the submenu.**

The selected Group returns to its default setting.

When Group settings become invalid

- When there is no Caller ID, designated ringtones and colors by Group are not activated.
- When PIM Lock is set or the other party is stored in the Secret memory, ringtones and colors are activated as follows:
 - For ringtones (Chaku-motion), Videophone ringtones (Videophone Chaku-motion), mail ringtones and mail tone time, priority is given to the “音の設定” setting of the “音・バイブレーター” setting.
 - No Group color is assigned to the following items:
 - Background of call reception screen
 - Redial data
 - Call history
 - A Group color is assigned to the following items:
 - Sent mail
 - Received mail list
 - Group Search screen and Phonebook Search result screen
- When more than one mail items are received at the same time, the ringtone plays for the last mail item.

Note

- When the melody set as the ringtone, Videophone ringtone, or mail ringtone, or the video/i-motion set as the Chaku-motion or Videophone Chaku-motion is deleted, it is replaced with “音の設定に連動”.
- Some colors may make the text difficult to view.
- You can set whether to play the entire melody (Play All) or play the part of a melody (Play Point) when you are playing a melody set as a ringtone or alarm tone, or playing it to select a music note in the Sound setting (see “Application” p.261).

Changing Group names of the FOMA Card Phonebook

The default group names are “グループ01” to “グループ10”.

1 In standby, select “でんわ” “グループ別設定” from Menu.

- Alternatively, you can access this function by selecting “設定” “プライバシー” “グループ別設定” from Menu in standby.


2 Enter your terminal ID number and press (選択).

3 Select “2.FOMAカード電話帳” and press (選択). The Group list appears.

4 Select a group and press (選択).

5 Enter the group name.

① Press  (選択).

② Use  to delete unnecessary characters and enter the Group name.

- Maximum number of characters registered depends on the characters to be entered.

Characters to be entered	Maximum number of characters registered
Only double-byte characters, double-byte and single-byte characters are mixed, single-byte characters and “ ` ” are mixed, single-byte Katakana or single-byte space and single-byte alphanumeric characters are mixed	Up to 10 characters regardless of whether single-byte or double-byte characters are used.
Single-byte alphanumeric characters only	Up to 21 single-byte characters

- When no character is entered, the group name provided by default is used.

6 Press (登録).



The group name is changed.

Making a Call Using Phonebook

You can search Phonebook by the following methods:

- Reading Search • Column Search (see p.108) • Memory No. Search (see p.108)
 - Phone No. Search (see p.109) • Group Search (see p.109)
 - FOMA Card Group Search (see p.110) • Secret Search (see p.114)
- You can search both the FOMA Built-in Phonebook and the FOMA Card Phonebook by Kana, Column, or Phone No. Search.
 - Searches cannot be performed when PIM Lock is set.
 - Use Secret Search for parties stored in the Secret memory. Other search methods do not display the Secret memory items.

Convenient Phonebook functions


- Phonebook entries can be displayed for confirmation (see p.111).
- Mail can be composed using Phonebook Search results. Select a recipient from search results and press , or select "03.メール作成" from the submenu. (see "Application" p.133).
- New phonebook entries can be saved from Phonebook Search results.
 - ① Select "01.新規登録" from the submenu.
The screen to select Phonebook to which mail address is saved appears.
 - ② Select "1.本体電話帳" or "2.FOMAカード電話帳" and press  (選択).
 - Repeat from Step 2 in *Saving Entries in the FOMA Built-in Phonebook* (see p.94) or in *Saving Entries in the FOMA Card Phonebook* (see p.99).

Reading Search


You can search for a party by entering the first Kana character in the name.

- 1 In standby, press  (電話帳), and press  (モード) repeatedly until the "フリガナ検索" screen appears.






- Alternatively, you can select "でんわ" "電話帳検索" from Menu in standby.
- Each press of  (モード) switches the search mode in order.



- When you use  (モード) to switch the search mode, the same search mode screen you selected this time appears the next time.
- While the FOMA Card is not installed or the FOMA Card cannot be accessed, the FOMA Card Group Search screen does not appear.
- If no key is pressed for about 3 minutes, the search screen is closed and the Standby screen reappears.

2 Enter a reading.






- Alternatively, you can search without entering a reading.
- Singly-byte Katakana, alphanumeric characters can be entered. You can use  to switch entry modes (in the 5-press Method).
- To move the cursor, use .
- If you make a mistake, use  to delete the character and reenter the correct character.




3 Press (検索).



Names are listed in the order of the reading. Phonebook entries whose reading matches the entered characters are selected.

- Alternatively, you can perform a search using  instead of pressing  (検索).
- If there are no entries with a reading that begins with the characters you entered, entries beginning with the next character appear in the search results.
-  appears for the phonebook entries saved in the FOMA Card Phonebook.

4 Select a phone number and press .

- Pressing and holding down  scrolls the search results. After all search results have been displayed, the top line is displayed again.
- If, after selecting a phone number, you select "05.付加情報発信" from the submenu, you can decide whether to include your caller ID information before dialing (see p.52).
- Press  ( TV) to make a videophone call.
- You can check the saved contents of phonebook entries (see p.111).

About the order of displayed search results

- If the same reading or phone number is saved in the FOMA Built-in Phonebook and the FOMA Card Phonebook, first, the FOMA Built-in Phonebook, and then the FOMA Card Phonebook appears.
- If more than one phonebook entry matches the search criteria or if you search without entering a reading, they appear in the following order:
 1. Single-byte spaces (blank spaces at the beginning of a reading)
 2. Kana (in Kana syllabary order)
 3. - , . ? ! * \$ °
 4. Alphabetic characters (in alphabetic and lower case, upper case order)
 5. Numeric characters (0 to 9)
 6. Single-byte symbols excluding those listed in above 3 (@ / etc.)
 7. Reading is not input (all blank)

Column Search

By selecting a syllabary column from ア, カ, ワ, and others, you can search for phone numbers whose reading starts with a character included in the selected syllabary column.

- 1** In standby, press  (電話帳), and press  (モード) repeatedly until the “行検索” screen appears.



- Alternatively, you can select “でんわ” “電話帳検索” from Menu in standby.

- 2** Select a column and press  (検索).

Names are listed in the order of the reading. Phonebook entries whose reading starts with the selected syllabary column are selected.

- If there are no phonebook entries with readings that begins with the selected column, entries of the next column will be selected.
- Order of displayed search results (see p.107)

- 3** Select a phone number and press .

- Follow Step 4 in *Reading Search* (see p.107)

Memory No. Search

You can search the FOMA Built-in Phonebook for an entry by entering a Memory number (000 to 699).

- Phonebook entries saved in the FOMA Card Phonebook do not appear.

- 1** In standby, press  (電話帳), and press  (モード) repeatedly until the “メモリ番号検索” screen appears.






- Alternatively, you can select “でんわ” “電話帳検索” from Menu in standby.

- 2** Use  (0) to enter a Memory number and press  (検索).



Memory number

The list of entries appears in the Memory number order. The phonebook entry of the entered Memory number is selected.

- You do not need to enter the zeros in numbers starting with “0” or “00”.
- Use  to increase or decrease numbers.
- If you make a mistake, use  to delete the number and reenter the correct number.
- Alternatively, you can search without entering a Memory number. Pressing  (検索) displays phonebook entries in order starting from the lowest Memory number.
- If there is no entry saved in the entered Memory number, the entry saved in the subsequent Memory number is selected.

3 Select a phone number and press .

- Follow Step 4 in *Reading Search* (see p.107)

Phone No. Search

You can enter part of a phone number and search for phone numbers in Phonebook that contain those numbers.




1 In standby, press (電話帳), and press (モード) repeatedly until the “電話番号検索” screen appears.



- Alternatively, you can select “でんわ” “電話帳検索” from Menu in standby.

2 Use (わん 記号) to (WXYZ) to enter part of a phone number and press (検索).

Only phonebook entries with a phone number that includes the entered number appear.

- If you make a mistake, use  (グループ) to delete the number and reenter the correct number.
- Alternatively, you can perform a search using  instead of pressing  (検索).
- Order of displayed search results (see p.107)

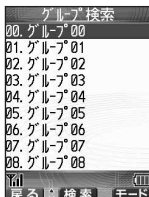
3 Select a phone number and press .

- Follow Step 4 in *Reading Search* (see p.107)

FOMA Built-in Phonebook Group Search

- Phonebook entries saved without the Group setting are classified under “グループ 00”.

1 In standby, press (電話帳), and press (モード) repeatedly until the “グループ検索” screen appears.



- Alternatively, you can select “でんわ” “電話帳検索” from Menu in standby.

2 Select a group and press  (検索).

- Only the phonebook entries in the selected group appear.
- Order of displayed search results (see p.107)

3 Select a phone number and press  .

- Follow Step 4 in *Reading Search* (see p.107)

FOMA Card Group Search

- Phonebook entries with no group setting are classified under “group 00”.

1 In standby, press  (電話帳), **and press**  (モード) **repeatedly until the “FOMAカードグループ検索” screen appears.**



- Alternatively, you can select “でんわ” “電話帳検索” from Menu in standby.

2 Select a group and press  (検索).

- Only the phonebook entries in the selected group appear.

3 Select a phone number and press  .

- Follow Step 4 in *Reading Search* (see p.107)

Confirming the Saved Contents of Phonebook Entries

- 1 Select a party from the Phonebook Search results, and select “04.詳細表示” from the submenu.



The details screen appears.

The set image







FOMA Built-in
Phonebook

- 2 Check the contents and press  (OK).

Check Storage Status

Checking Phonebook Storage Status

This function allows you to check the number of unused phonebook entries, the total number of saved phone numbers and mail addresses, and the Secret memory entries.

- 1 In standby, select “設定” “通話時間・状況確認” “登録状況確認” from Menu.
- 2 Select “1.シークレットデータなし” and press  (選択).
 - To display the number of the Secret memory entries
 - ① Select “2.シークレットデータあり” and press  (選択).
 - ② Enter your terminal ID number and press  (選択).
- 3 Use  to display items.
 - You can also use  to switch display range.
- 4 Confirm the contents and press  (OK).

Editing Phonebook Entries



- When PIM Lock or Keydial Lock is set, you cannot edit phonebook entries. Cancel the setting before correcting.
- The following Phonebook entries cannot be overwritten.
 - Phonebook entries stored in the Secret memory
 - Phonebook entries specified for Accept Calls/Reject Calls (when Accept Calls/Reject Calls is set to “する”)

1 Select a phonebook entry from the Phonebook Search results, and select “02.編集” from the submenu.

2 Edit the contents.

- Follow Steps 3-13 in *Saving Entries in the FOMA Built-in Phonebook* (see p.95) or Steps 3-7 in *Saving Entries in the FOMA Card Phonebook* (see p.99).
- If you edit a name, the reading must also be changed.
- If you edit a phone number in the FOMA Built-in Phonebook, the telephone type icon may change according to the phone number.
- Change the Memory number when you save the edited data in a different person's entry in the FOMA Built-in Phonebook.

To cancel the operation

- ① Press  (戻る).
- ② Select “いれえ” and press  (選択).

3 Press (登録).

- When the Memory number is changed to another unused number, the Standby screen reappears after saving the entry as a different entry.

4 Select “はい” and press (選択).

The phonebook entry is overwritten.

- To cancel the operation, select “いれえ”.
- When “電話番号1”, “電話番号2”, “メールアドレス1” or “メールアドレス2” is deleted from a FOMA Built-in Phonebook entry that has multiple telephone numbers or mail addresses, the number of the “電話番号” field or “メールアドレス” field is later automatically moved up.

Note


- Use Secret Search for parties stored in the Secret memory (see p.114).

Deleting Phonebook Entries

- You cannot delete an entry when PIM Lock or Keydial Lock is set: Cancel the setting before deleting.
- Phone numbers specified for Accept Calls/Reject Calls cannot be deleted (when Accept Calls/Reject Calls is set to “する”)

Deleting a phone number

1 Select a phone number from the Phonebook Search results, and select “09.一件削除” from the submenu.

- Alternatively, you can press and hold down  to delete entries.


2 Select “はい” and press (選択).

- The phone number is deleted.
- To cancel the operation, select “いいえ”.

Deleting more than one phone numbers

1 In the Phonebook Search result screen, select “10.選択削除” from the submenu.

2 Select a phone number and press (選択).


- You can select multiple phone numbers (up to 30).
- To cancel your selection, select the phone number you selected and press  (解除).



Phone number 1
Phone number 2
Phone number 3

3 Press (決定).

4 Select “はい” and press (選択).

- The phone number is deleted.
- To cancel the operation, select “いいえ”.
 - You can cancel deletion by pressing  (中止) in the screen displayed while deleting. However, once the items are deleted, they cannot be restored.

Note

- When “phone no. 1” or “phone no. 2” is deleted in an entry saving multiple phone numbers, the number of the phone no. field is automatically moved up.
- When you delete all the phone numbers saved in one phonebook entry, the mail addresses and other contents corresponding to the numbers are all deleted.
- To delete parties stored in the Secret memory, recall the parties using Secret Search.
- Even when a phonebook entry that contains an image is deleted, the corresponding image stored in the FOMA terminal remains.
- When you delete a phone number from Phonebook, the name is no longer displayed in Redial Data or Call History.

Protecting Confidential Phonebook Entries

This function searches for parties whose entries are saved as the Secret memory.

- When calls are made to phone numbers saved as the Secret memory, the phone numbers are recorded in Redial Data. If you do not wish such numbers to be known to others, delete the redial data item.
- Secret Search cannot be used when PIM Lock is set.


1 In standby, select “でんわ” “シークレット検索” from Menu.

2 Enter your terminal ID number and press  (選択).

3 Press  (モード) repeatedly to select a search method, and search Phonebook.

- Operating procedures are described below.
 - Reading Search: Repeat from Step 2 in *Reading Search* (see p.107)
 - Column Search: Repeat from Step 2 in *Column Search* (see p.108)
 - Memory No. Search: Repeat from Step 2 in *Memory No. Search* (see p.108)
 - Phone No. Search: Repeat from Step 2 in *Phone No. Search* (see p.109)
 - Group Search: Repeat from Step 2 in *FOMA Built-in Phonebook Group Search* (see p.110)

Making a Call Using Simplified Keypresses

By registering frequently used phone numbers in Memory numbers 000 to 009 in the FOMA Built-in Phonebook, you can dial these numbers simply by pressing the numeric key for the last digit in the Memory number and then pressing .

- Calls are made to the phone number saved in “電話番号1”.
- Calls to parties saved as the Secret memory cannot be made in this way.
- This function is not available when PIM Lock is set.

Example Dialing Memory number 008

1 In standby, press .

- There is no need to press  for the 0s in the 10s and 100s places.


2 Press .

The phone number saved in “電話番号1” of the Memory number 008 is dialed.


To make a call using One-press Dialing

You can make a call with just a single keypress to parties saved in Memory number 000 to 009.






Example Dialing Memory number 008

① In standby, press and hold down .

The phone number saved in “電話番号1” of the Memory number 008 is dialed.

- It is not necessary to press .

Note

- To call parties saved in Memory numbers 000 to 099, press the last 2 digits (  to  ) and press  (Calls are made to the phone numbers saved in “電話番号1”).

Saving Phonebook Entries to the FOMA Card


You can copy phonebook entries between the FOMA Built-in Phonebook and the FOMA Card Phonebook.

- Up to 50 phonebook entries to the FOMA Card Phonebook, and up to 700 phone numbers and mail addresses to the FOMA Built-in Phonebook can be copied, respectively.
- You cannot copy any entry when PIM Lock or Keydial Lock is set. Cancel the setting before copying.

Items to be copied

- **To copy phonebook entries from the FOMA Built-in Phonebook to the FOMA Card Phonebook**
 - Name: Up to 10 characters (when only double-byte characters or both single-byte characters and double-byte characters are contained), including the first and family names, are copied. When only single-byte characters, up to 21 single-byte characters are copied.¹
 - Reading: Up to 25 single-byte or 12 double-byte characters, including the first and family names, are copied¹.
 - Phone number 1
 - Mail address 1²
 - Group: Copied to the group with the same group name. If the same group name does not exist, it is copied to Group 00.

1 The characters exceeding the maximum number of characters are truncated.
In the FOMA Card Phonebook, a single-byte Katakana is converted to a double-byte Katakana .


2 You cannot copy “ ` ” to the FOMA Card Phonebook.
- **To copy phonebook entries from the FOMA Card Phonebook to the FOMA Built-in Phonebook**
 - Name: Copied to a family name.
 - Reading: Copied to a family name. In the FOMA Built-in Phonebook, a double-byte Katakana is converted to a single-byte Katakana .
 - Phone number 1: The phone type icon is .
 - Mail address 1
 - Group: Copied to the group with the same group name. If the same group name does not exist, it is copied to Group 00.

Note

- To copy a phonebook entry stored in the Secret memory, perform Secret Search (see p.114).

Copy a phonebook entry

Example To copy a FOMA Built-in Phonebook entry to the FOMA Card Phonebook

- 1 Select a FOMA Built-in Phonebook entry from the Phonebook Search results screen, and select “06. 一件コピー” from the submenu.**
 - To copy a FOMA Card Phonebook entry to the FOMA Built-in Phonebook, select the FOMA Card Phonebook entry.
- 2 Select “はい” and press  (選択).**

The entry is copied.

 - To cancel the operation, select “いいえ”.

Copying multiple Phonebook entries

You can select all phonebook entries or multiple entries to copy.

Example To copy all FOMA Card Phonebook entries to the FOMA Built-in Phonebook.

1 In the Phonebook Search result screen, select “08.全件コピー” from the submenu.


- To select multiple phonebook entries to copy, select “07.選択コピー” from the submenu.

2 Select “2.本体電話帳へコピー” and press (選択).

- To copy entries to the FOMA Card Phonebook, select “1.FOMAカードへコピー”.

To select multiple phonebook entries to copy

① Select an entry and press (選択).


- You can select multiple entries (up to 30).
- To cancel your selection, select the entry you selected and press  (解除).

② Press (決定).

Proceed to Step 3.

3 Select “はい” and press (選択).

Entries are copied.

- To cancel the operation, select “いいえ”.
- You can cancel copy by pressing  (中止) on the screen displayed while copying. However, once the items are copied, they cannot be restored.

When the maximum number of entries that can be saved is exceeded


A prompt appears asking whether to copy entries for the applicable number.

① Select “はい” and press (選択) to copy.

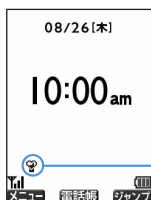
- To not copy, select “いいえ”.

Turning All Phone Sounds Off

In order not to disturb people around you in places where silence is required, you can set the FOMA terminal to turn off all sound. While in the Manner mode, the terminal vibrates to let you know when a call is received.

- When Manner Mode is set simultaneously with Drive Mode, Drive Mode takes precedence ( appears).

1 In standby or during a call, press and hold down .




Manner Mode is set.

- Alternatively, you can press and hold down  to set Manner Mode.

Appears when Manner Mode is on.

The icon also appears on the Inspiration window

When Manner Mode is set

- Ringtones, Keypad Sounds, warning sounds and all other sounds generated by the FOMA terminal are silenced. However, you cannot eliminate the shutter sound and Auto Timer sounds when shooting still images and video clips. You cannot adjust the sound volume, either.
- When there is an incoming call or mail is received,  flashes and the FOMA terminal vibrates.
- When an alarm time arrives, the alarm does not sound and instead the FOMA terminal vibrates.
- When a specified schedule time arrives for which the sound or vibrator has been set, the alarm does not sound and instead the FOMA terminal vibrates.
- When the FOMA terminal vibrates, it follows the pattern set for each sound in Vibrator (see p.121).
- The Manner Mode items can be changed by setting Manner Mode Selection. When Manner Mode Selection is turned on, the FOMA terminal operates in accordance with the specified Manner Mode Selection setting (see p.119).
- Even when Manner Mode has been set, the FOMA terminal does not vibrate in the following cases.
 - Flash movie sound effects are played (see "Application" p.27).
 - Playing back video/i-motion contents (the FOMA terminal vibrates when there is an incoming call in case Chaku-motion is set)

Canceling Manner Mode

1 In standby or during a call, press and hold down .

Manner Mode is canceled.

- Alternatively, you can press and hold down  in standby to cancel Manner Mode.

Note

- When you recharge the FOMA terminal using the desktop holder with the power turned on, be sure to cancel Manner Mode. Failure to do so could cause the FOMA terminal to vibrate out of the holder when a call is received.
- Note that when your FOMA terminal is placed on a table or other hard surface and Manner Mode is set, the vibrations generated by an incoming call could cause the FOMA terminal to fall to the floor.

Customizing Manner Mode

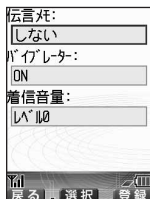
This function is used to customize Manner Mode. The items that can be changed and the phone operation when Manner Mode is on are followings

Items that can be changed	Default	Operation in the Manner mode
伝言メモ Record Message	しない No	When “する” is set, Record Message is automatically set.
バイブレーター Vibrator	ON	When “OFF” is set, you are not alerted to incoming calls, mail and Message R/F by vibration.
着信音量 Ring Volume	レベル0 Level 0	When the level is set to other than “レベル0”, that ringtone sounds

- When Manner Mode is set, the terminal operates according to the new settings.

1 In standby, select “設定” “音・バイブレーター” “オリジナルマナーモード” from Menu.



2 Select “1. する” and press  (選択).





- To cancel the setting, select “2. しない”.

3 Set each item.



To set Record Message

- ① Select the “伝言メモ” field and press  (選択).
- ② Select “する” or “しない” and press  (選択).

To set Vibrator

- ① Select the “バイブレーター” field and press  (選択).
- ② Select “ON” or “OFF” and press  (選択).



To set Ring Volume

- ① Select the “着信音量” field and press  (選択).
- ② Select a volume level and press  (選択).

4 Press  (登録).

Manner Mode Selection is set.

When Manner Mode Selection is turned on**“伝言メモ” operation in Manner Mode Selection**

- When “しない” is set, Record Message does not work during the Manner mode regardless of the Record Message setting.
- When “する” is set,   appears in the main display during the Manner mode and Record Message operates.

“バイブレーター” operation in Manner Mode Selection

- When “OFF” is set, the FOMA terminal does not vibrate during the Manner mode regardless of the Vibrator setting. However, the FOMA terminal vibrates in the following cases:
 - When a specified alarm time arrives (the FOMA terminal vibrates even though only sound notification has been set)
 - When a specified schedule time arrives for which sound or vibrator has been set (the FOMA terminal vibrates even though only sound notification has been set).
 - When the vibrator is activated by an i- ppli application.
- When “ON” is set, the FOMA terminal vibrates according to each pattern set in Vibrator regardless of the ON/OFF setting of Vibrator (The FOMA terminal does not vibrate when the pattern is off).

“着信音量” operation in Manner Mode Selection

- Regardless of the Ring Volume setting of the Adjust Volume function, the FOMA terminal operates in accordance with Manner Mode Selection during the Manner mode.
- Even when “レベル0” is set, the shutter sound or Auto Timer sound when shooting still images and video clips cannot be eliminated. You cannot adjust the sound volume, either.

Using the Vibrator to Announce Incoming Calls and Alarms

In addition to the ringtone, vibration can also be used to announce incoming calls and specified alarm entries. Vibration patterns can be set for the following types of sound:

Type of sound	Default	Description
着信音 Ringtone	パターン1 pattern 1	When a call is received
TV電話着信音 Videophone ringtone	パターン2 pattern 2	When a videophone is received
メール着信音 Mail ringtone	パターン3 pattern 3	When mail is received
メッセージR着信音 Message R tone	パターン4 pattern 4	When a Message R is received
メッセージF着信音 Message F tone	パターン4 pattern 4	When a Message F is received
アラーム音 Alarm tone	パターン5 pattern 5	When a specified alarm or schedule time arrives
非通知着信音 Hidden-ID tone	着信音に連動 link ringtone*	When you receive a call from a party without a Caller ID
通知不可着信音 No-ID tone	着信音に連動 link ringtone*	When you receive a call from a party who is unable to send a Caller ID (a call from abroad or from a general subscriber phone via various forwarding services, etc.)
公衆電話着信音 Payphone tone	着信音に連動 link ringtone*	When you receive a call from a payphone

* The terminal vibrates according to the pattern set in “着信音”.

1 In standby, select “設定” “音・バイブレーター” “バイブレーター” from Menu.


2 Select “1.ON” and press  (選択).



- To cancel all vibration, select “2.OFF”.
Vibrator is turned off.

3 Select a type of sound and press  (選択).


4 Select a pattern and press  (選択).

- When patterns are changed using , the terminal vibrates according to the selected pattern. To stop vibration, press any numeric key.
- Select “OFF” to turn off vibration.
- “アラーム音” permits pattern selection only (it cannot be turned off).

5 Press (登録).

Vibrator is set and the FOMA terminal vibrates.

When Vibrator is turned on

-  appears on the main display and the Inspiration window.
- Even if Vibrator is turned on, the terminal does not vibrate in the following cases:
 - When the pattern in the vibrator is turned off.
 - When Manner Mode is set while the vibrator in Manner Mode Selection is turned off.
 - When Drive Mode is set
 - Flash movie sound effects are played (see “Application” p.27).
 - Playing back video/i-motion contents (the FOMA vibrates when there is an incoming call in case set to Chaku-motion.)
- Do one of the followings to turn off all sounds from the FOMA terminal.
 - Set Manner Mode (see p.118).
 - Set “サイレント” in the Sound setting (see p.138).
 - Set the ringing volume to “レベル0” (see p.136).
 - Set the alarm/vibrator of Alarm Time to “パイプのみ” (see p.175).
 - Set the sound/vibrator of Schedule to “パイプのみ” or “なし” (see p.178).

Note

- The vibration might not be felt when the phone is in the pocket of a heavy coat, etc.
- Turn off Vibrator when you recharge the FOMA terminal using the desktop holder with the power turned on. Failure to do so could cause the FOMA terminal to vibrate out of the holder when a call is received.
- Note that when your FOMA terminal is placed on a table or other hard surface and the vibrator setting is on, the vibrations generated by an incoming call could cause it to fall on the floor.
- When Manner Mode is set, the FOMA terminal vibrates according to the pattern set in Vibrator.
- When the vibrator is activated by an i- ppli, application the FOMA terminal vibrates even when Vibrator is off.

Advanced Operations



Setting No Ringtone from a Party Not Saved in Phonebook

You can set the number of seconds (Call start time) starting from when the call is received until when the ringtone starts. You can defeat nuisance calls such as malicious phone calls by setting a short period of time.

- This function cannot be turned on when Reject Unstored Number is on (see p.127).




1 In standby, select “設定” “プライバシー” “無音着信時間設定” from Menu.

2 Enter your terminal ID number and press  (選択).


3 Use  to  to enter the period of time and press  (設定).



Mute Ring Time is set.

- You can set a time period of between 0 and 99 seconds.
- Use  to adjust the amount of time.
- If you make a mistake, use  to delete the number and reenter the correct number.
- To cancel Mute Ring Time, set the time to any of the following and press  (設定).
 · __s · _0s · 00s

When Mute Ring Time is set

- When a party who is not saved in Phonebook the FOMA terminal operates as follows until the elapses.
 - Ringtone does not sound and  (P key) does not flash.
 - The call reception screen appears on the main display.
 - The backlight of the Inspiration window is not turned on. The call reception screen is not displayed.
 - The caller hears the ring back tone.
 - If the call is disconnected within the 呼出動作開始時間, the call is recorded in Call History as Mute Receive. The Missed Call icon is not indicated.
- When someone without Caller ID calls, the setting does not operate. Whether the call is answered is determined by Caller ID-Based Call Block.
- When a call is received during a call, this function does not operate.
- When Accept Calls/Reject Calls is set simultaneously with the setting, calls from the parties not approved to receive calls are rejected regardless of the setting.
- If PIM Lock is set, even when a call is received from a party saved in Phonebook, this function is available.

Note

- Whether mail ringtone for Short Message (SMS) or i-mode mail sounds is determined by the Mail Ringtone setting, regardless of the setting.
- If the setting is longer than Record Message Shift Time, the Record Message function is selected with a tone mute. To start a ringtone and then shift to the Record Message function, set Record Message Shift Time longer than the setting. Since the relationship between Record Message Shift Time and the Voice Mail Service ring time, the Call Forwarding Service ring time, and Auto Function ring time is the same as one between Record Message Shift Time and the Mute Ring Time, pay attention to setting them.

Accepting Calls Only from Specified Phone Numbers

By specifying parties saved in Phonebook, you can set the phone to only answer calls from selected parties while rejecting calls from other parties.


- Maximum number of parties that can be specified: 20
- This function is not available when PIM Lock is set.
- Accept Calls and Reject Calls cannot be set simultaneously.
- Selected parties cannot be deleted one by one. Delete all parties and perform the selection procedure again.
- This setting works with parties that have a Caller ID. It is recommended that Caller ID Display Request Service and Caller ID-based Call Block be set (see p.219, 128).

1 In standby, select “設定” “プライバシー” “電話帳指定着信許可” from Menu.

2 Enter your terminal ID number and press  (選択).


3 Select “1.する” and press  (選択).

- To cancel all parties set for Accept Calls, select “2.しない”.

4 Search Phonebook to select a party to store and press  (選択).



- Searching for phonebook entries (see p.106)
- The FOMA Card Phonebook cannot be searched.
- Alternatively, you can select parties stored in the Secret memory.
- If multiple phone numbers are saved in an entry, all phone numbers appear. Accept Calls is set for every phone number displayed.

5 Select “1.登録する” and press  (選択).

Accept Calls is set for the entry.

- To search again, select “2.登録しない”.

When Accept Calls is set for phonebook entries

- When a call is received from a person for whom Accept Calls is not set, the phone does not ring and a record of the call is recorded in Call History (The Missed Call icon appears). The caller hears a busy signal and the call is disconnected.
- When someone without Caller ID calls, the setting does not operate. Whether the call is answered is determined by Caller ID-based Call Block.

Note

- The set Memory number can be checked by “設定状況確認 (Check Settings)” (see p.185).
- When Accept Calls is set, phonebook entries set for Accept Calls cannot be edited.
- Short Message (SMS) and i-mode mail are received regardless of this function.

Rejecting Calls from Specified Phone Numbers

By specifying parties saved in Phonebook, you can set your FOMA terminal to not answer calls from selected parties.

- Maximum number of parties that can be saved: 20
- This function is not available when PIM Lock is set.
- Accept Calls and Reject Calls cannot be set simultaneously.
- Selected parties cannot be deleted one by one. Delete all parties and select again.
- This setting works with parties that have a Caller ID. It is recommended that Caller ID Display Request Service and Caller ID-Based Call Block be set (see p.219, 128).

1 In standby, select “設定” “プライバシー” “電話帳指定着信拒否” from Menu.

2 Enter your terminal ID number and press  (選択).

3 Select “1.する” and press  (選択).

- To cancel all parties set for Reject Calls, select “2.しない”.

4 Search Phonebook to select a party to save and press  (選択).



- Searching for phonebook entries (see p.106).
- FOMA Card Phonebook cannot be searched.
- Alternatively, you can select parties saved as the Secret memory.
- If multiple phone numbers are saved in an entry, all phone numbers appear. Reject Calls is set for every phone number displayed.

5 Select “1.登録する” and press  (選択).

Reject Calls is set for the entry.

- To search again, select “2.登録しない”.

When Reject Calls is set for phonebook entries

- When a call is received from a person for whom Reject Calls is set, the phone does not ring and a record of the call is saved in Call History (Missed Call icon appears). The caller hears a busy signal and the call is disconnected.
- When a call is received without a Caller ID, the Reject Calls function is not activated. Whether the call is answered is determined by Caller ID-based Call Block.

Note

- The set Memory number can be checked by “設定状況確認 (Check Settings)” (see p.185).
- When Reject Calls is set, phonebook entries set for Reject Calls cannot be edited.
- Short Message (SMS) and i-mode mail are received regardless of this function.

Rejecting Calls from Parties Not Saved in Phonebook


You can set your FOMA terminal to not receive calls from parties who are not saved in Phonebook.

This function cannot be used in the following cases:

- When PIM Lock is set.
- When Mute Ring Time is on.
- This setting works with parties that have a Caller ID. It is recommended that Caller ID Display Request Service and Caller ID-based Call Block be set (see p.219, 128).

1 In standby, select “設定” “プライバシー - ” “登録外電話番号拒否” from Menu.

2 Enter your terminal ID number and press  (select).

3 Select “1.する” and press  (選択).

Reject Unstored Number is set.

- To cancel the setting, select “2.しない”.

When an incoming call is rejected using Reject Unstored Number

- When a call is received from a person not saved in Phonebook, the phone does not ring and a record of the call is saved in Call History (Missed Call icon appears). The caller hears a busy signal and the call is disconnected.
- If a party makes a call without Caller ID notification, this function is not activated. Whether to receive the call depends on Caller ID-based Call Block.

Note

- Short Message (SMS) and i-mode mail are received regardless of this function.

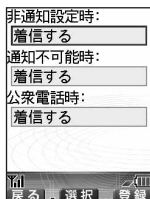
Rejecting Calls from Anonymous Callers

You can select various reasons why calls are rejected.



Anonymity reason	Description
非通知設定 Hidden ID	The caller is intentionally blocking the Caller ID.
通知不可能 No-ID	The call is from a party who cannot send Caller ID information (calls from overseas or from a general subscriber phone via various forwarding services, etc. Depending on which carriers the call goes through, the Caller ID may be sent.)
公衆電話 Payphone	The call is from a payphone.

1 In standby, select “設定” “プライバシー” “非通知着設定” from Menu.

2 Enter your terminal ID number and press  (選択).



3 Select the reason why calls without Caller ID should be rejected.

- ① Select the selection field and press  (選択).
- ② Select “着信しない” and press  (選択).
 - To accept anonymous calls, select “着信する”.

4 Press  (登録).

Caller ID-based Call Block is set.

When an incoming call is rejected using Caller ID-based Block

When an anonymous call is received and the call is rejected, the phone does not ring and the date, time and reason the call was rejected are recorded in Call History (Missed Call icon appears). The caller hears a busy signal and the call is disconnected.

Note

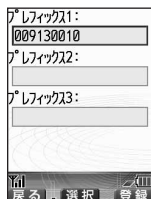
- Short Message (SMS) and i-mode mail are received regardless of this function.

Registering a Number to Be Added to the Beginning of a Phone Number

If you register international call prefixes and other numbers (prefixes) to be added to phone numbers, you can easily make a phone call with a prefix added.


- Maximum number of prefixes that can be registered: 3
- “009130010 the DoCoMo WORLD CALL number” is provided by default.

1 In standby, select “設定” “通話・通信” “プレフィックス設定” from Menu.



- If one or more prefix numbers have already been registered, the registered numbers are displayed.

2 Enter a number.

- The number provided by default can be overwritten.
- ① Select a number from the “プレフィックス1” to “プレフィックス3” fields and press  (選択).
- ② Enter the number.
 - Up to 10-digit numbers can be entered.

3 Press (登録).

Prefix is registered.

Making a Call by Specifying a Subaddress

You can call up a specific telephone or data terminal by specifying the subaddress. You can use subaddress to select contents in “M-Stage Vライブ”.

If you set the Subaddress setting “ON”, the numbers subsequent to the subaddress delimiter “*” of a phone number are recognized as a subaddress.

1 In standby, select “設定” “通話・通信” “サブアドレス設定” from Menu.

2 Select “1.ON” and press (選択).

- “*” is set as a subaddress delimiter.
- To not recognize “*” as a subaddress delimiter, select “2.OFF”.

Note

- If “ON” is set, the signs in the following cases are not recognized as a subaddress delimiter:
 - “*” entered at the beginning of a phone number
 - “*” entered immediately after “1 8 6 (* 3 1 #)” or “1 8 4 (# 3 1 #)”

Reducing Background Noise for Clearer Sound

This function reduces background noise to make your voice clearer.

- It is recommended that you leave the Noise Reduction function turned on at all times.
- This function is activated during a voice call and videophone call.

1 In standby, select “設定” “通話・通信” “ノイズキャンセラ” from Menu.

2 Select “1.ON” and press  (選択).

Noise Reduction is set.

- To cancel the setting, select “2.OFF”.

Setting Alarm Sound of Call Recovery

Calls may be temporarily cut off when you enter a tunnel or get close to large buildings. The Call Recovery function reconnects the call when the signal condition has recovered. Beeps sound from the earpiece to inform you when the call has been reconnected. The person you are talking to hears nothing during the cutoff time.

- The maximum cutoff duration after which the call can be reconnected is about 10 seconds (this depends on signal conditions or state of usage).
- The cutoff time is still charged.
- This function is activated during a voice call and videophone call.

1 In standby, select “設定” “通話・通信” “再接続アラーム” from Menu.

The alarm selection screen appears.

2 Select “1.高いアラーム音 (high tone)” or “2.低いアラーム音 (low tone)” and press  (選択).

Call Recovery is set.

- To cancel the setting, select “3.アラーム音なし”.

Informing of Poor Reception with an Alarm Sound

If signal conditions become poor and the call is about to be cut off, an alarm sound to inform you of the situation.

- This function is activated during a voice call and videophone call.

1 In standby, select “設定” “通話・通信” “通話品質アラーム” from Menu.

The alarm selection screen appears.

2 Select “1.高いアラーム音 (high tone)” or “2.低いアラーム音 (low tone)” and press (選択).


Quality Alarm sound is set.

- To cancel the setting, select “3.アラーム音なし”.

Note

- When a call condition becomes worse suddenly, a call may go out without alarm sound sounding.

Answering a Call by Pressing Numeric Keys

When a call is received, you can answer the call by pressing the following keys as well as .

-  ~ , , , , 

1 In standby, select “設定” “通話・通信” “エニーキーアンサー設定” from Menu

2 Select “1.する” and press (選択)

Any Key Answer is set.

- To cancel the setting, select “2.しない”.

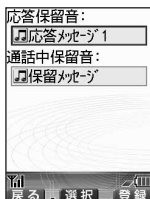
Note

- When a videophone call is received, you cannot answer the call with the Any Key Answer function keys even it is set to “する”.

Setting a Hold Tone

You can set an announcement or melody played during Answer Hold or Call Hold.

1 In standby, select “設定” “音・バイプレーター” “保留音設定” from Menu.



- The default setting appears on the screen.

2 Set a hold tone.

To set an Answer Hold tone

- ① Select the “応答保留音” field and press (選択).
- ② Select “応答メッセージ1” or “応答メッセージ2” and press (選択).

- The answering messages indicate the following:

応答メッセージ1 Answering message1	ただいま電話に出ることができません。そのままお待ちになるか、しばらくたってからおかけ直してください。 (Unable to answer the phone right now. Please hold or call later again)
応答メッセージ2 Answering message2	ただいま電話に出ることができません。しばらくたってからおかけ直してください。 (Unable to answer the phone right now. Please call later again)

To set a Call Hold tone

- ① Select the “通話中保留音” field and press (選択).
- ② Select “保留メッセージ” or “保留メロディ” and press (選択).

- The hold message and melody indicates the following:

保留メッセージ Hold message	ただいま保留しております。しばらくお待ちください。 (The call is on hold. Please hold.)
保留メロディ Hold melody	主よ人の望みの喜びよ (Jesu, Joy of Man's Desiring)

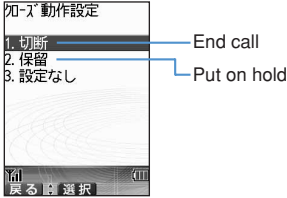
3 Press (登録).

The hold tone is set.

Ending a Call/Putting a Call on Hold by Closing the FOMA Terminal

You can set the operation to be performed when you close the FOMA terminal during a call (end call or put on hold).

1 In standby, select “設定” “通話・通信” “クローズ動作設定” from Menu.



2 Select “1.切断” or “2.保留” and press (select).

Close Operation is set.

- To cancel the setting, select “3.設定なし”.

When “切断” is set

- If you close the FOMA terminal during a call, the call ends. The call also ends when displaying the submenu or adjusting the earpiece volume during a call. The call also ends during Multitask.
- If you close the FOMA terminal during the following operations as well as during a call, the call ends:

Operation		What happens when the FOMA terminal is closed
During dialing	• While dialing (including while dialing during a call ¹)	Cancelled
	• While recording during dialing	Call is disconnected
During calling	• During calling (including while calling during on hold/while calling during a call ¹)	Cancelled
During a call	• While recording during a call • When recording a still image message or a video message during a videophone call ¹	Call is disconnected
	• While receiving during a call • While holding during a call (including during multi-connection ²) • While ending Voice call and switching from Voice call to Videophone because a videophone call is received during a voice call • While ending Videophone and switching from Videophone to Voice call because a voice call is received during a videophone call	Current call is disconnected
During multi-connection	• While the submenu is displayed during multi-connection • While adjusting the earpiece volume during multi-connection	Current call is disconnected






1 The taken still image or video is saved. In the following cases, however, the images may not saved:

- When you close the terminal immediately after you start recording a still image memo
- When you close the terminal within 3 seconds after you start recording a video memo

2 After you close the FOMA terminal, a ringtone sounds indicating that a call is on hold.

- In the following cases, “切断” by close operation is invalid:
 - During receiving
 - During playback of answer message
 - During on hold
 - During using Record Message
 - During using Quick Record Message
 - During i-mode communication
 - During sending Short Message (SMS)
 - During 64K data communication
 - During packet communication
 - During connecting a switch-equipped earphone/microphone

When “保留” is set

- If you close the FOMA terminal during a call, the call is put on hold.
 - Call Hold is not cancelled even if you open the FOMA terminal or connect a switch-equipped earphone/microphone.
Cancelling to hold is as follows.
 - During holding a voice call, press  . When the Any Key Answer function is set, you can also cancel by pressing the Any Key Answer function key (see p.131).
 - During holding a videophone, press  () or  . If you press  , an alternate image is sent.
 - When you close the FOMA terminal while performing operation during a videophone call, the operation is stopped and the call is put on hold.
 - If you close the FOMA terminal when you record a still image or a video memo during a videophone call, the taken still image or video clip is saved. In the following cases, the taken image may not be saved:
 - When you close the FOMA terminal immediately after you start recording a still image memo
 - When you close the FOMA terminal within 3 seconds after you start recording a video memo
 - In the following cases, “保留” by close operation is invalid:
 - During dialing (including when dialing during a call)
 - During receiving
 - During on hold (including during Videophone answering hold)¹
 - During playback of answering message
 - During Record Message (including while preparing videophone Record Message)
 - During recording a talk memo
 - During connection of Videophone²
 - During Short Message (SMS) sending
 - While connecting a switch-equipped earphone/microphone
 - During 64K data/packet communication
- 1 Callers are kept connected on hold when you close the FOMA terminal.
2 If you move while talking after you close the FOMA terminal during connection of a videophone call, an alternate image is sent.

When “設定なし” is set

- When you close the FOMA terminal during a call, the other party hears nothing. You cannot also hear the other party's voice.
- When you close the FOMA terminal while performing operation during a videophone call, the operation is stopped and the call continues. However, the other party hears nothing. You cannot also hear the other party's voice. When your self Image is being sent, an alternate image is sent.
- If you close the FOMA terminal while you record a still image or video memo during a videophone call, the taken still image or video clip is saved. In the following cases, the image may not be saved:
 - When you close the FOMA terminal immediately after you start recording a still image memo
 - When you close the FOMA terminal within 3 seconds after you start recording a video memo

Note

- When a switch-equipped earphone/microphone is connected, regardless of this setting if you close the FOMA terminal during a voice call on hold, holding continues. If you close the FOMA terminal during a videophone, the following operations are performed. Even if you open the FOMA terminal after closing, the following operations are continued:
 - When your self image is being sent, an alternate image is sent.
 - While a video memo is recorded, recording is cancelled and an alternate image is sent. An image is saved (if you close the terminal within 3 seconds after you start recording a video memo, an image may not be saved).
 - Holding during a videophone call continued on hold.
- To put on hold during a call while connecting a switch-equipped earphone/microphone is the same as that of while disconnecting a switch-equipped earphone/microphone (see p.49, 79).

Checking and Resetting Call Time and Communication Time

You can check the call time and communication time. You can check the last call time, communication time, accumulated (total) call, and the last reset date and time. The displayed time is a guide.


- The information on the last voice call time and last digital communication time is deleted when the power is turned off.
- The time spent during communication using the i-mode cannot be displayed. The time is not added to the total voice call time and total digital communication time. For information related to i-mode charges etc., see the FOMA i-mode User's Manual that is provided when you subscribe to the i-mode service.

[View Call Time]

Viewing the call time

1 In standby, select “設定” “通話時間・状況確認” “通話時間表示”.

- The Videophone communication time is included in the digital communication time.
- “前回音声通話時間” indicates the last call time.
- “前回デジタル通信時間” indicates the last digital communication time.
- “積算音声通話時間” and “積算デジタル通信時間” indicates the total call time and communication time since setting by default or last reset.
- The maximum call time that can be counted is 999 h (hours) 59 m (minutes) 59 s (seconds). After that the time is automatically reset and again starts from 0 s (second).

2 Check the contents and press  (OK).

[Reset Total Call Time]

Resetting total information

1 In standby, select “設定” “通話時間・状況確認” “通話積算時間リセット” from Menu.

2 Enter your terminal ID number and press  (選択).

3 Select “はい” and press  (選択).

The total voice call time and total digital communication time are reset.

- To cancel the operation, select “いいえ”.

Note

- The displayed times are only guides. They are more or less different from the actual call time and communication time.
- When no clock setting is made, the date of the last reset appears as “0000/00/00” and the time of the last reset as “00:00”.

Adjusting the Sound Volume Such as Ringtone

You can adjust a sound level of the FOMA terminal. The maximum sound volume is the same regardless of a sound type.

Type of sound	Default (Levels available)	Sound adjusted
着信音量 Ring volume	レベル4 Level 4 (Levels 0 to 6, Step Up, Step Down)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sound made when a call is received • Sound made when mail or Message R/F are received
受話音量 Earpiece volume	レベル4 Level 4 (Levels 1 to 6)	Voice or sound heard from the earpiece
アラーム音量 Alarm volume	レベル4 Level 4 (Levels 1 to 6, Step Up, Step Down)	Sound generated when alarm time or schedule time arrives
i アプリ音量 i- ppli volume	レベル13 Level 13 (Levels 0 to 24)*	Sounds generated by i- ppli application or i- ppli Standby screen.
メロディ再生音量 Melody volume	レベル13 Level 13 (Levels 0 to 24)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sound used when playing back, "melody" in the built-in memory by melody player • Sound used when melodies are attached to a mail or Message R/F • Sound level used when melodies are downloaded from a site and played back • Sound used when sounding sound effect for Flash movie while displaying a site
動作再生音量 Video volume	レベル4 Level 4 (Levels 0 to 6)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sound used when video/i-motion is played back in standby or in wake-up. • Sound used when video/i-motion is played back by Video Player • Sound used when i-motion is downloaded from a site and played back. • Sound used when video/i-motion is played back from i-motion mail.

* The sound level can be adjusted to any of 25 levels when the switch-equipped earphone/microphone is connected. When the switch-equipped earphone/microphone is connected, because the volume changes in 6 steps for every 4 levels, the sound level may not be changed even though you change the volume. However, sound level can be adjusted to any of 25 levels while melody player plays melodies.

1 In standby, select “設定” “音・バイプレーター” “音量調整” from Menu.

The sound type selection screen appears.


2 Select a type of sound and press (選択).



Current sound level

Use to select a sound level and press (設定).

The sound level is set.

- Selecting “レベル0” turns off the sound.
- When  is pressed at “レベル6” of “着信音量” and “アラーム音量”, the indication changes to “Step Up” and to “Step Down”.

To turn off the sound

To turn off all FOMA terminal sounds

Set Manner Mode or Drive Mode. Regardless of the Ring Volume setting, all sounds emitted from the FOMA terminal are turned off. However, the shutter sound of still images and video clips or auto timer sound cannot be eliminated. You cannot adjust the sound volume, either.


- When Manner Mode is on and Ring Volume in Manner Mode Selection is set to something other than “レベル0”, the ringtone plays at the Manner Mode Selection setting.
- When both Manner Mode and Drive Mode are set, Drive Mode takes precedence.

To turn off specific sounds

Make the following settings as required for each type of sound:

Type of sound	Setting	Page
着信音 Ringtone	Set “着信音量” to “レベル0”.	p.136
	Set all ringtones to “サイレント”.	p.138
アラーム音 Alarm tone	Set the sound/vibrator of the alarm time to “パイプのみ”.	p.175
	Set the Sound/Vibrator setting of Schedule to “パイプのみ” or “なし”.	p.178
i アプリ音 i- ppli sound	Set “i アプリ音量” to “レベル0”.	p.136
メロディ再生音 Melody Playback tone	Set “メロディ再生音量” to “レベル0”.	p.136
動画再生音 Video playback sound	Set “動画再生音量” to “レベル0”.	p.136
ボタン確認音 Keypad sound	Set Keypad Sound to “OFF”.	p.143
充電確認音 Charging sound	Set Charging Sound to “OFF”.	p.143

Note

- Adjusting the earpiece volume during a call (see p.60)
- Adjusting the ring volume while your phone is ringing (see p.61)
- When Ring Volume is set to “レベル0”,  appears on the main display and the Inspiration window.
- Adjusting the earpiece volume and the ring volume adjusts the level of related sounds.

Type of sound adjusted	Related sounds also adjusted	Remarks
着信音量 Ring volume	Sounds heard during the Sound setting, Answer Hold tone, Charging sound, tone announcing Auto Power On, Sounds informing of the reception of message at the Voice Mail Service Center, etc.	1
受話音量 Earpiece volume	Battery Level check sound, Keypad sound, operation error warning sound, alarm sound announcing that a call is about to be cut off (Quality Alarm), etc.	2

1. Sounds are heard at “レベル4” during “Step Up” or “Step Down”.
2. These sounds are heard only through the earpiece. They are turned off when Keypad Sound is turned off or Manner Mode or Drive Mode is set (the quality alarm is not affected).

Changing the FOMA Terminal Ringtones

The melodies preloaded by default and other downloaded melodies can be used as ringtones for your FOMA terminal. You can set video/i-motion including sound as a ringtone when you receive a voice or videophone call. In addition, you can set a tone time of a ringtone that sounds when you receive mail or Message R/F.

- The tone time cannot be used when PIM Lock is set.

Setting item	Default	Description
着マーション / 着信音 Chaku-motion/ ringtone	着信音 Ringtone	Set whether to use a “着マーション” or “着信音” when a call is received.
着マーション Chaku-motion		Set video/i-motion played when a call is received, if you select “着マーション” at “着マーション / 着信音”.
着信音 Ringtone	パターン 1 Pattern 1	Set a ringtone that sounds when a call is received, if you select “着信音” at “着マーション / 着信音”.
TV電話着マーション / TV電話着信音 Videophone Chaku-motion/ Videophone ringtone	TV電話着信音 Videophone ringtone	Set whether to use “TV電話着マーション” or “TV電話着信音” when a videophone call is received.
TV電話着マーション Videophone Chaku-motion		Set video/i-motion played when a videophone call is received, if you select “TV電話着マーション” at “TV電話着マーション / TV電話着信音”.
TV電話着信音 Videophone ringtone	パターン 2 Pattern 2	Set a tone that sounds when a videophone call is received, if you select “TV電話着信音” at “TV電話着マーション / TV電話着信音”.
メール着信音 Mail ringtone	パターン 3 Pattern 3	Set a tone that sounds when mail is received.
メール鳴動時間 Mail tone time	10秒 10 seconds	A mail tone sounds for the set time period.
メッセージR着信音 Message R tone	パターン 4 Pattern 4	Set a tone that sounds when a Message R is received.
メッセージR鳴動時間 Message R tone time	10秒 10 seconds	A Message R ringtone sounds for the set time period.
メッセージF着信音 Message F tone	パターン 4 Pattern 4	Set a tone that sounds when a Message F is received.
メッセージF鳴動時間 Message F tone time	10秒 10 seconds	A Message F ringtone sounds for the set time period.
アラーム音 Alarm tone	パターン 5 Pattern 5	Set a tone that sounds when a specified alarm or schedule time arrives.
非通知着信音 Hidden-ID tone	着マーション / 着信音 Chaku-motion/ringtone	Set a tone that sounds when you receive a call from a party without a Caller ID.
通知不可着信音 No-ID tone	着マーション / 着信音 Chaku-motion/ringtone	Set a tone that sounds when you receive a call from a party who is unable to send a Caller ID (a call from abroad or from a general subscriber phone via various forwarding services, etc).
公衆電話着信音 Payphone tone	着マーション / 着信音 Chaku-motion/ringtone	Set a tone that sounds when you receive a call from a pay phone.

Note

- If you set video/i-motion set for “着マーション” or “TV電話着マーション”, when they are deleted, the melodies set for “着信音” or “TV電話着信音” are used. If you set the melodies other than those preloaded by default for the items other than “着マーション” or “TV電話着マーション”, when they are deleted, the melodies preloaded by default are used.
- You can set whether to play the entire melody (Play All) or play the part of a melody (Play Point) when you are playing a melody set as a ringtone or alarm tone, or playing it to select a music note in the Sound setting (see “Application” p.261).

Melody list

Melody name	Screen display	Composer (artist)
パターン1～5 Patterns 1 to 5	パターン1～パターン5	-----
電話・メロディA Phone melody A	電話・メロディA	-----
電話・メロディB Phone melody B	電話・メロディB	-----
電話・黒電話 Phone retro	電話・黒電話	-----
電話・SuperBell™ Z Phone SuperBell™ Z	電話・SuperBell™ Z	-----
電話・女性ボイス Phone female	電話・女性ボイス	-----
メール・メロディA Mail melody A	メール・メロディA	-----
メール・メロディB Mail melody B	メール・メロディB	-----
メール・SuperBell™ Z Mail SuperBell™ Z	メール・SuperBell™ Z	-----
メール・女性ボイス Mail female	メール・女性ボイス	-----
メール・英語ボイス Mail English	メール・英語ボイス	-----
アラーム・アナログ時計 Alarm analog	アラーム・アナログ時計	-----
アラーム・SuperBell™ Z Alarm SuperBell™ Z	アラーム・SuperBell™ Z	-----
アラーム・女性ボイス Alarm female	アラーム・女性ボイス	-----
発車メロディ 車掌DJ mix Train melody conductor DJ mix	発車メロディ 車掌	-----
主よ人の望みの喜びよ Jesu, Joy of Man's Desiring	主よ人の望みの	BACH JOHANN SEBASTIAN
カノン Canon	カノン	PACHELBEL JOHANN
ジムノペディ第1番 1ere Gymnopedie	ジムノペディ第1番	SATIE ERIK ALFRED LESLIE
凱旋行進曲 Triumphal March	凱旋行進曲	VERDI GIUSEPPE
おもちゃの兵隊のマーチ (「キューピー3分クッキング」のテーマ) Parade of the wooden soldiers (Kewpie 3 min cooking theme)	おもちゃの兵隊	JESSEL LEON
森のくまさん The Bear	森のくまさん	American folk song
島唄 Shimauta	島唄	Miyazawa, Kazufumi
さくら Sakura	さくら	Naotaro, Moriyama
・ネットワークメロディ Network melodies ¹ ・データ交換メロディ Data exchange melodies ²	Melody title	Cannot be displayed when no melody has been saved. Melodies without titles and corrupted melodies are displayed as “無題”.
サイレント Silent	サイレント	-----
着メーション / 着信音 Chaku-motion/ringtone	着メーション / 着信音	The tone sounds in accordance with the tone set in “着メーション” / “着信音”. You can select a tone in hidden-ID tone, no-ID tone, or payphone tone.

¹ “Network melody” is a melody received via mail or downloaded from a site.

² “Data exchange melody” is a melody downloaded via infrared communication or copied from *Memory Stick Duo*.

* The composer (artist) name is written based on a JASRAC web site.



Recording license No.: T-0300330

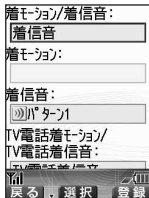


License No.: 0001354JRCL

Changing a Chaku-motion or ringtone of a voice or videophone call

Example To set “着マーション” or “着信音”.

1 In standby, select “設定” “音・バイプレーター” “音の設定” from Menu.



2 Set a Chaku-motion/ringtone.

- ① Select the “着マーション / 着信音” field and press (選択).
 - To select the operation when a videophone call is received, select the “TV電話着マーション / TV電話着信音” field and press (選択).
- ② Select “着マーション” or “着信音” and press (選択).
 - To set “TV電話着マーション / TV電話着信音”, select “TV電話着マーション” or “TV電話着信音” and press (選択).

3 Set a Chaku-motion or ringtone.

To set a Chaku-motion

- ① Select the “着マーション” or “TV電話着マーション” field and press (選択).
- ② Select “1.カメラ動画”, “2.ネットワーク動画” or “3.TV電話動画” and press (選択).
Video/i-motion file name and the first shot appear.
 - You cannot set the following video/i-motion to a Chaku-motion:
 - Video/i-motion whose size is other than 128 x 96 or 176 x 144 dots.
 - Video/i-motion which contains only image and contains telop.
 - Video/i-motion which is restricted to playback.
 - Video/i-motion which the distributor restricted to be set to a Chaku-motion.
- ③ Use to select a video/i-motion clip and press (選択).
 - To select a video/i-motion clip from the list, select “2.一覧表示” from the submenu, select a folder, and press (選択). When the picture list or title list appears, select a video/i-motion clip and press (詳細). You can switch between the picture list and the title list and display the information of video/i-motion other than Videophone video (see “Application” p.249).
 - To play the video/i-motion clip, select “1.再生” from the submenu. When playback is completed, the file name and the first shot of the video clip appear.
 - To stop playback, press ().
 - You can adjust sound volume by using during playback.
 - No sound is heard when you set the phone to not play ringtones.

To set a ringtone**① Select the “着信音” field of the sound you want to set and press  (選択).**

- The following icons appear before the melody name:



Pattern



Sound effect



Melody, silent



Network melody, Data exchange melody

- Only the first characters appear for long melody names.

② Select a melody name and press  (選択).

The ringtone is set.

- As you select, selected melody plays back twice (No sound is heard when you set the phone to not play ringtones). To stop playback, press any numeric key.
- To set to not emit any sound, select “サイレント”.

4 Press  (登録).

The sound is set.

When the ringtone is set

- When a voice call is received, the ringtones sound in the following order of precedence:
 - Hidden-ID tone, no-ID tone, payphone tone
 - Group setting ringtone (when the Caller ID is notified)
 - Ringtone (“着メーション” or “着信音” set in the Sound setting)
When PIM Lock is set, “着信音” set in the Sound setting sounds. (Melodies other than those provided by default are set for “着信音”, pattern 1 is played.)
- When a videophone call is received, the ringtones sound in the following order of precedence:
 - Group setting ringtone (when the Caller ID is notified)
 - Videophone ringtone (“TV電話着メーション” or “TV電話着信音” set in the Sound setting)
When PIM Lock is set, “TV電話着信音” set in the Sound setting sounds. (Melodies other than those provided by default are set for “TV電話着信音”, pattern 2 is played.)
- Group setting ringtone does not sound when PIM Lock is set or the caller is stored in the Secret memory even if the caller is listed in a group

Note

- If you set video/i-motion with image and sound as Chaku-motion or Videophone Chaku-motion, video/i-motion appears instead of images stored in Phonebook or a receive animation set as a visual partner when a call is received.
- When you set video/i-motion only with the sound as Chaku-motion or Videophone Chaku-motion, a receive animation set as a visual partner appears when a call is received.








Changing a ringtone or mail tone time of mail or Message R/F

Example To set “メール着信音”

1 In standby, select “設定” “音・バイプレーター” “音の設定” from Menu.**2 Set a ringtone.**

- Follow Step 3 in *Changing a Chaku-motion or ringtone of a voice or videophone call* (To set a ringtone).

3 Set a tone time.

- ① Select “メール鳴動時間” field and press  (選択).
 - To set “メッセージR鳴動時間” or “メッセージF鳴動時間”, select the “メッセージR鳴動時間” field or “メッセージF鳴動時間” field, and press .
- ② Use  to  to enter the set time and press  (確定).
 - You can set a time period of between 0 and 30 seconds.
 - Use  to adjust the amount of time.
 - If you make a mistake, use  to delete the number and reenter the correct one.

4 Press (登録).

The sound is set.

When the mail ringtone is set

- When mail is received, the mail ringtones sound in the following order of precedence:
 1. Group setting mail ringtone
 2. Mail ringtone (“メール着信音” set in the Sound setting)
 When PIM Lock is set, however, the mail ringtones do not sound. Also, the message reception screen does not appear.
- Even if mail is received from a party listed in a group, the designated mail ringtone by group is not played when the other party is stored in the Secret memory.

Note

- When you set 0 second to a tone time, no ringtone or vibration is emitted for mail or Messages R/F reception.
- When mail or Message R/F is received during a call or operation, the mail ringtone or ringtone for Message R/F does not sound. The message reception screen does not appear.
- Even if Message R/F is received while PIM Lock is set, the ringtone for Message R/F does not sound. The message reception screen does not appear.
- When mail and Message R/Fs are received at the same time, only the mail ringtone sounds. When 2 or more mail items are received at the same time, the ringtone sounds for the last mail item.

Changing an alarm tone

You can change an alarm tone, a hidden-ID tone, no-ID tone and payphone tone.

- You can also select “着モーション / 着信音” when setting a hidden-ID tone, no-ID tone and payphone tone.

Example To set “アラーム音”

1 In standby, select “設定” “音・バイプレーター” “音の設定” from Menu.

2 Set an alarm tone.

- Follow Step 3 in *Changing a Chaku-motion or ringtone of a voice or videophone call* (To set a ringtone) (see p.140).
- Chaku-motion cannot be set for an alarm tone.

3 Press (登録).

The sound is set.

Note

- Even if alarm or Schedule is set, the alarm screen is not displayed and the alarm does not sound or the phone does not vibrate when PIM Lock is set.

Keypad Sound

[Default] ON

Turning Off Keypad Sound

1 In standby, select “設定” “音・バイブレーター” “ボタン確認音” from Menu.

2 Select “2.OFF” and press  (選択).
Keypad Sound is turned off.

Note

- When Keypad Sound is turned off, the following sounds are also turned off:
 - Beeps that indicate the remaining battery level
 - Warning sounds that indicate operation error
- Even if the Keypad Sound is turned off, the shutter sound of still images and video clips, and auto timer sound are emitted:
- The keypad sound is emitted at the sound level set in Earpiece Volume.

Charging Sound


[Default] ON

Turning On Charging Sound

You can set Charging Sound that is emitted when charging is started and completed.

- When the FOMA terminal is turned off, a charging sound is not emitted.

1 In standby, select “設定” “音・バイブレーター” “充電確認音” from Menu.

2 Select “1.ON” and press  (選択).
Charging Sound is turned on.

- Select “2.OFF” to turn off Charging Sound.

Note

- A charging sound is not emitted in the following cases:
 - When Manner Mode is set.
 - When Drive Mode is set.
 - During a call etc.
- A charging sound is emitted at ring volume of incoming calls. When the volume is set to “レベル0”, it is emitted at “レベル1”, and when set to “Step Up” and “Step Down”, it is emitted at “レベル4”.

Customizing the Standby Screen

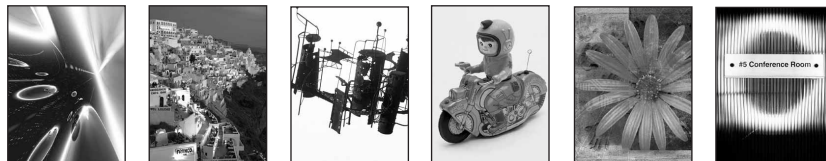
You can change the Standby screen.

- The following images are provided by default:

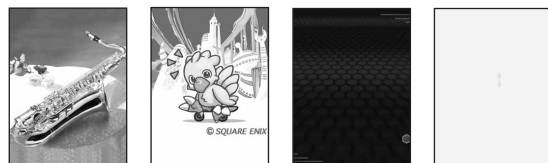
Displaying the Camera image and other images (see p.145)

You can display still images taken with the camera or images downloaded from a site.

Displaying the digital clock (see p.147)

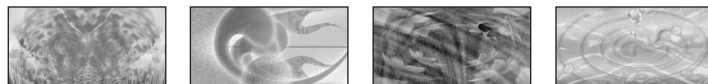


Default



Setting the display to change seasonally (see p.147)

Spring (March to May) Summer (June to Aug.) Autumn (Sept. to Nov.) Winter (Dec. to Feb.)




Other

- Displaying the calendar (see p.148)

Note

- When you set an animation for the Standby screen, it is played when you open the FOMA terminal.
- When you set video/i-motion for the Standby screen, it is played with sound when you open the FOMA terminal. The volume is determined by the video volume set by Adjust Volume, a video player or others. The sound is not played back in the Manner mode and the Drive mode.
- When a Flash movie is set for the Standby screen, the first image is displayed and the image is played back when the FOMA terminal is opened. Playback continues until it comes to the end or for about 75 seconds if no operation is performed. After the playback, the image when playback ended is displayed until the FOMA terminal is closed, then opened again.
 - When the screen is switched such as when button is pressed during playback, the image is played back from the beginning when returned to the Standby screen.
 - The sound effect of a Flash movie does not sound. You cannot perform operations such as item selection during playback of Flash movie.
- During playback of an animation, press or to end playback.
- Clock does not appear during playback of an animation or a Flash movie.
- A saved Flash movie may be viewed differently from that displayed on a site. The Flash movie may not be played back even if it is played back correctly on a site.
- You can also set i-ppli Standby screen from the Standby Screen setting (see "Application" p.75).

When you have set the i- ppli Standby screen

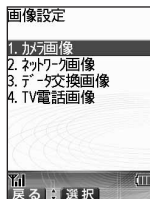
When the Standby Screen setting is changed while the i- ppli Standby screen is set, “i アプリ待受画面を解除しますか？(Release i- ppli Standby screen?)” message appears. Select “はい” and press  (選択) to release the i- ppli Standby screen. Select “いいえ” to not release. When “いいえ” is selected, the i- ppli Standby screen is displayed instead of the screen set in the Standby Screen setting.

Displaying the Camera image and other images

You can set images such as still images taken with the camera or i-motion downloaded via i-mode that are stored in the FOMA terminal.

- This function is not available while PIM Lock is set.
- The following images cannot be set:
 - Images for the Inspiration window only
 - Images that can only be set as the visual partner
 - Images saved in the Secret setting folders
 - Still images larger than 640 × 480 dots
 - Animations larger than 320 × 240 dots and Flash movie

- In standby, select “設定” “画面・表示” “待受画面設定” “1.待受画像設定” “1.イメージ” or “i モーション” from Menu.**



- Select a type of image and press  (選択).**

Still images or video/i-motion clips appear.

- Still images appear when “1.イメージ” is selected, and video/i-motion clips appear when “2. i モーション” is selected in Step1.

- Use  to select an image.**

To select an image from the folder list


- ① Select “5.一覧表示” from the submenu**

The folder list appears.

- Folders set as the Secret setting are not displayed.

- ② Select a folder and press  (選択).**

The picture list or title list appears (see “Application” p.226).

- ③ Select an image and press  (詳細).**

To play video/i-motion, animation or Flash movie

① Select “1.再生” from the submenu.

- To adjust the sound volume of video/i-motion, use to select the sound level and press (OK).
- To stop playback of video/i-motion, press (). Alternatively, you can press or to end playback. (Playback is continued even when you close the FOMA terminal during playback.)
To stop playback of the animation and Flash movie in the middle, press (停止).
Alternatively, you can press , , , ~ , or to end playback.
- A Flash movie will end when no operation is performed for about 75 seconds.
- The sound effect of a Flash movie does not sound. You cannot perform operations in a Flash movie such as item selection.
- A saved Flash movie may be viewed differently from that displayed on a site. The Flash movie may not be played back even if it is played back correctly on a site.
- To play video/i-motion, a prompt appears while Manner Mode or Drive Mode is set. To play the video/i-motion with sound, select “はい”, to play without sound, select “いいえ” and press (選択).
- When there is a voice call during playing back a Flash movie, the message that indicates the image is wrong may appear during ending the call.
In this case, if the Flash movie is played back again, it may be played back correctly.

4 Use to select a type of clock.

- When you press , the display changes in the following order: Digital clock (large) Digital clock (small) No clock.

5 Change the display format, etc. as needed.

To change the clock format (12/24-hour system)

① Select “2.12/24h切替” from the submenu.

To change the image-display format

The following image-display formats can be selected

中央表示 Center display	When an image is wider than the display area, the image is reduced and displayed. In addition, when the image is taller than the display area, the top and bottom are truncated and displayed accordingly.
全画面表示 Full screen	When the image is larger than the display area, it is the same as for “中央表示”. When the image is smaller than the display area, the width or height of the image is enlarged to the display area and displayed accordingly. However, it is twice the maximum magnification of this. (Even if enlarged, it may be displayed smaller than screen size).

① Select “3.全画面表示 (full screen)” from the submenu.

To switch the screen from the full-size display to the center display, select “3.中央表示 (center display)” from the submenu.

To change the position of the clock time and the date

① Select “4.時計位置調整” from the submenu.

② Use to adjust the position and press (選択).

- When the large clock is displayed, only the position of the clock time can be changed. The position of the date cannot be changed.
- When the small clock is displayed, changing the position of the clock time also changes the position of the date.

6 Press (選択).

The Standby screen is set.

Note

- If the set image is deleted or the Secret setting is set, the Standby Screen setting returns to the default setting.
- Even if you set a still image taken in the Burst mode, it is not played.
- Some i-motion types cannot be set for the Standby screen.
- When i-motion is set, *Web to* functions cannot be used from the Standby screen.

Displaying the digital clock

1 In standby, select “設定” “画面・表示” “待受画面設定” “1.待受画像設定” “3.デジタル時計” from Menu.



2 Select a background design and the clock display size.



Large clock



Small clock

- ① Use  to select a background design.
- ② Use  to select a clock display size.

3 Change the digital clock display format and position as needed.

- Follow Step 5 in *Displaying the Camera image and other images* (see p.146).
- The image display mode cannot be changed.

4 Press  (選択).

The Standby screen is set.

Setting the display to change seasonally

The Standby screen display can be set to change automatically every season.

- The seasonal image cannot be used when the date and time have not been set.

1 In standby, select “設定” “画面・表示” “待受画面設定” “1.待受画像設定” “4.季節” from Menu.

2 Change the clock display format and position as needed.

- Follow Step 5 in *Displaying the Camera image and other images* (see p.146).
- The clock display size cannot be changed (small clock only).

3 Press  (選択).

The Standby screen is set.

Displaying the calendar

- The calendar cannot be used when the date and time have not been set.

1 In standby, select “設定” “画面・表示” “待受画面設定” “1.待受画像設定” “5.カレンダー” from Menu.

2 Change the digital clock display format as needed.

- Follow Step 5 in *Displaying the Camera image and other images* (see p.146).
- The clock display size cannot be changed (small clock only).
- The position of the clock and the date cannot be changed.

3 Press  (選択).

The Standby screen is set.

Note

- Saturdays are indicated in blue, Sundays and holidays are in red. Note that the screen display does not change even if new holidays are changed or created. The holidays are based on the Law Concerning National Holidays and a law that revises part of the Old-Age Welfare Law (law no. 59, 2001) (as of May 2004).

Set Photo Call

[Default] 両画面表示 Both display

Displaying the Image saved in Phonebook during an Incoming Call

You can display the image saved in Phonebook on the main display and Inspiration window when there is an incoming call from a specified party.

1 In standby, select “でんわ” “フォトコール設定” from Menu.

- A selection screen appears asking where to display the image when there is an incoming call. .
- Alternatively, you can select “設定” “画面・表示” “フォトコール設定” from Menu in standby.


2 Select “1.両画面表示”, “2.メインディスプレイ” or “3.インスピレーションウィンドウ” and press  (選択).

Photo Call is set.

- To cancel the setting, select “4.表示しない”.

Note

- Even when you have set to display image, the set image is not displayed in the following cases.
 - When a call is received without a Caller ID
 - When a ringtone is set for Chaku-motion
 - When the other party is stored in the Secret memory
 - When PIM Lock is set
- If images are set to not be displayed with Photo Call, the animation set for “電話着信アニメ (receive animation)” in the Partner setting is displayed on the main display.
- When mail is received, the image set in Phonebook is not displayed.
- When the FOMA terminal is opened, the image is not displayed in the Inspiration window.

Setting the Inspiration Window

You can change the display of the Inspiration window.

- Displaying still images taken with the camera or images downloaded via i-mode (Set Back Display)
- Turning off the display of the Inspiration window when closed (Power Saver) (see p.150)
- Displaying the caller's name, phone number and mail subject during an incoming call or mail reception (Set Caller Information) (see p.151)

[Set Back Display]

[Default] デジタル時計 (大) Digital clock (large)

Changing the Inspiration window display

- This function is not available while PIM Lock is set.

Displaying the Camera image and other images

The following images cannot be set:

- Flash movies
- Video/i-motion clips
- Animations
- Images for the Standby screen only
- Images saved in the Secret setting folder
- Images that can only be set as the Visual Partner
- Images larger than 240 x 320 dots

1 In standby, select “設定” “画面・表示” “インスピレーションウィンドウ” “1.背面画面設定” “1.イメージ” from Menu.

2 Select a type of image and press  (選択).

The image appears.

3 Use  to select an image.


To select an image from the folder list

① Select “1.一覧表示” from the submenu.

- Follow Step 3 in *Displaying the Camera image and other images* (see p.145).


To check an image

① Select “2.情報表示” from the submenu.

- You can use  to display the file name or image size.

② Press  (OK).

4 Use  to select a type of clock.

- When you press , the display changes in the following order: Digital clock (large) Digital clock (small) No clock.

5 Press  (選択).

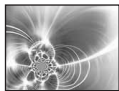
The Inspiration window display is set.

Note

- When an image is larger than display area for the Inspiration window, the image is reduced until it fits the display area.
- If the set image is deleted or the Secret setting is set, the Standby Screen setting returns to the default setting.

Displaying the digital clock


The following images are provided by default:



Default

1 In standby, select “設定” “画面・表示” “インスピレーションウィンドウ” “1.背面画面設定” “2.デジタル時計” from Menu.

2 Use  to select a design.

- You can use  to select the clock size.

3 Press  (選択).

The Inspiration window display is set.

[Power Saver]


[Default] 非表示モード Nondisplay mode

Conserving battery life

The Inspiration window changes to nondisplay mode to conserve battery.

1 In standby, select “設定” “画面・表示” “インスピレーションウィンドウ” “2.省電力設定” from Menu.




The mode selection screen appears.

2 Select “1.非表示モード” and press  (選択).

Power Saver is set.

- To make the display on the screen to not disappear, select “2.常時表示モード”.

When you set to conserve battery life

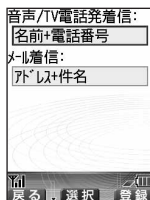
- In standby, if about 1 minute elapses with the FOMA terminal closed without any operation, the screen mode changes to “非表示モード (nondisplay mode)” and the display on the screen disappears. Power Saver also operates after about 1 minute while recharging the battery with the power on.
- “非表示モード (nondisplay mode)” is canceled in the following cases:
 - When a call is received
 - When mail or Messages R/Fs are received
 - When  (Rear key),  or  (SideC) is pressed
 - When the FOMA terminal is opened
 - When the alarm or schedule time or date arrives
 - When the switch is used for making a call during connecting a switch-equipped earphone/microphone, etc.

Displaying the caller's name or mail subject during an incoming or outgoing call

You can set whether to display the caller's name, phone number, mail subject, etc. in the Inspiration window when there is an incoming call, a call is made or mail is received.

- Displaying the image of the caller set in Phonebook during receiving a call or making a call (see p.148)

1 In standby, select “設定” “画面・表示” “インスピレーションウィンドウ” “3.相手表示設定” from Menu.



2 Set the display item for an outgoing/incoming voice or videophone call.

① Select the “音声 / TV電話発信” field and press (選択).

② Select an item and press (選択).

- Select any of “名前 + 電話番号 (name + phone no.)”, “名前のみ (name only)”, “電話番号のみ (phone no. only)” or “表示しない (no display)”.

3 Set the display item for receiving mail.

① Select the “メール着信” field and press (選択).

② Select an item and press (選択).

- Select any of “アドレス + 件名 (address + subject)”, “アドレスのみ (address only)” or “表示しない (no display)”.

4 Press (登録).

Caller Information is set.

When you set to display the caller/sender's name, phone number or mail subject, etc.

- With the FOMA terminal closed, when there is an incoming call, a call is made or mail is received, the Inspiration window displays the caller's phone number, address, etc. in accordance with the specified setting. When the caller's phone number or address is saved in Phonebook, the caller/sender's name is displayed.
 - When an incoming call has no Caller ID, the phone number or name is not displayed.
 - Even though you saved a phone number with “186 (✕ 31#)” or “184 (#31#)” prefix, the name is displayed if an incoming call has a Caller ID. However, in Redial Data, the name is displayed only when the caller's phone number completely matches the phone number saved in Phonebook, including “186 (✕ 31#)” or “184 (#31#)” prefix.
 - In the following cases, the name is not displayed even when the phone number or mail address matches the phone number or address saved in Phonebook.
 - When the party is stored in the Secret memory
 - When PIM Lock is set
 - When Mail Security is set*
 - When mail is sorted to the Secret setting folder*
- *The phone number or mail address and subject is not displayed, as well.

Setting the Start Screen Displayed When You Turned Power On

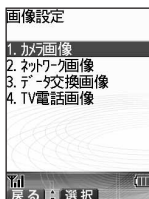
When the power of your FOMA is turned on, and until the Standby screen appears, you can set a video/i-motion such as a video clip taken with the camera or an i-motion video clip downloaded via i-mode that is stored in the FOMA terminal.

- You cannot set Flash movies, still images, animations and images saved to the Secret setting folder.

Example When setting the video/i-motion which is saved in the FOMA terminal

1 In standby, select “設定” “画面・表示” “ウェイクアップ表示” from Menu.

2 Select “2. i モーション” and press  (選択).



- To reset the setting to the default, select “1. ウェイクアップアニメーション”. Proceed to Step 5.
- To cancel the setting, select “3. 設定なし”.

3 Select a type of image and press  (選択).

The video/i-motion clip appears.

4 Select an image.

To playback a video/i-motion clip

① Select “1.再生” from the submenu.

- Follow Step 3 in *Displaying the Camera image and other images* (see p.145).

To select an image from the folder list

① Select “2.一覧表示” from the submenu.

- Follow Step 3 in *Displaying the Camera image and other images* (see p.145).

5 Press  (選択).

Wake-up Display is set.

Note

- When you set a video/i-motion, it is played with sound. The sound volume is determined by the video volume set by Adjust Volume, a videoplayer or others. The voice is not played back in the Manner mode and the Drive mode.

Setting a Visual Partner

An animation can be displayed in the main display when you receive or make a call, or send or receive mail (Visual Partner).

- In addition to the preset default images, you can also display still images taken with the camera or data (i-anime or images) downloaded from sites.
- This function cannot be used while PIM Lock is set.

Setting a Visual Partner

An animation appears in the following screens when Visual Partner is set:

Type	Screen where an animation appears
確認画面 OK OK screen	Screen confirming that the function was correctly performed
確認画面 NG Failed screen	Screen confirming that the function could not be correctly performed
電話発信アニメ Call animation	Screen that appears when dialing out
電話着信アニメ Receive animation	Screen that appears when a call is received
メール送信アニメ Outmail animation	Screen that appears during mail transmission
メール着信アニメ Inmail animation	Screen that appears during mail and Message R/Fs reception
はい/いいえアニメ Yes/No animation	Prompt requesting a “はい/いいえ” response

- In standby, select “設定” “画面・表示” “パートナー設定” from Menu.



Default character image

- Select a visual partner.

- Select “ユーザーデータ” to set a still image you took with the camera or a downloaded i-anime or image. You cannot set anything when no image or other data has been set in “ユーザーデータ”.
- To cancel the setting, select “設定なし”.

To confirm a visual partner animation

- ① Press (一覧).
- ② Use to select a screen and press (再生).
The animation is played twice.
 - To stop playback the animation, press (停止).
- ③ Press (戻る).

- Press (選択).

Visual Partner is set.


Note

- When “ユーザーデータ” is set, a “設定なし” animation is displayed on the screen when no animation is set. You can check and change the set animation.
- When setting “はい/いいえアニメ” of “ユーザーデータ”, animations up to 240 dots wide × 132 dots high can be displayed in the animation display area of each screen. For other screens, animations up to 240 dots wide × 144 dots high can be displayed in the display area. Images that are wider than the display area are reduced and displayed. In addition, when the image is taller than the display area, the top and bottom are truncated and displayed accordingly.
- Still images taken in burst shooting are not played even if such images are set.
- Character images set by the Partner setting are not displayed on a part of screen while i-ppli is running (“設定なし” image is displayed on the screen). Even when “ユーザーデータ” is set, a “設定なし” animation may appear by memory shortage.


Changing user data

You can check the image saved for “ユーザーデータ” in the Partner setting. You can also newly save an image on the screen where an image has not yet been set and replace the set image with the new one.

1 In standby, select “設定” “画面・表示” “パートナー設定” from Menu.

2 Select “ユーザーデータ” and press  (一覧).

The image that is currently set appears.

- Use  to check images that are set on each screen.
- “ユーザーデータ未登録 (No user data is stored)” appears on the screen where an image has not yet been set.

3 Use  to select a screen and select “1.変更” from the submenu.

4 Select a type of image and press  (選択).

- The following images cannot be set:
 - Images whose use is fixed to a specified screen, such as an image for the Standby screen only
 - Flash movies
 - Video/i-motion clips
- Images larger than 240 × 320 dots

5 Select an image.

To select an image from the folder list

① Press  (一覧).

- Follow Step 3 in *Displaying the Camera image and other images* (see p.145).

6 Press  (選択).


The image is changed.


Releasing user data

You can release the image set for “ユーザデータ” in the Partner setting. It is possible to cancel the image on each screen one by one or all images on all screens at once.

- Even when you release an image, the images saved in the FOMA terminal are not deleted.


1 In standby, select “設定” “画面・表示” “パートナー設定” from Menu.

2 Select “ユーザデータ” and press  (一覧).

3 Use  to select a screen and select “2.解除” from the submenu.
The image is released.

To release all images

① Select “3.全件解除” from the submenu.

② Select “はい” and press  (選択).

All images are released.

- To cancel the operation, select “いいえ”.

Note

- When “ユーザデータ” is set in the Partner setting, a “設定なし” animation is displayed on the screen when you released the image. If all images are released, the Partner setting returns to the default setting.
- You cannot set the “ユーザデータ” setting when no images are saved in “ユーザデータ”.

Adjusting Display Contrast

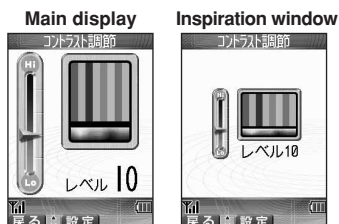
The LCD contrast can be adjusted when the display's readability becomes poor due to the viewing angle or surrounding brightness. You can adjust the contrast of the main display and the Inspiration window to one of 20 levels, from level 1 to level 20.

1 In standby, select “設定” “画面・表示” “コントラスト調節” from Menu.

A selection screen appears asking which screen to be adjusted.

2 Select “1.メインディスプレイ Main display” or “2.インスピレーションウィンドウ Inspiration window” and press (選択).



Current contrast level appears.



- The contrast of the Inspiration window cannot be checked on the main display. Adjust the contrast while looking at the Inspiration window.

3 Use to select the level and press (設定).

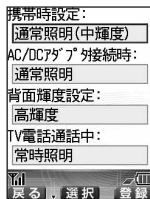
The contrast is set.

- Press  to raise the contrast level; press  to lower the contrast level.

Setting the Display Light and Key Light

You can set the display light for the main display, Inspiration window, and keys of the FOMA terminal.

1 In standby, select “設定” “画面・表示” “照明設定” from Menu.



2 Set the display light for each item.

- ① Select an item field and press (選択).
- ② Select a displaying way and press (選択).




3 Press (登録).

Display Light is set.






Note

- Regardless of the On mobile setting and Back DSP brightness setting, the main display and Inspiration window lights are turned on in the following cases: For Videophone, lighting when there is an incoming call during Answer Hold or playing back answer messages is operated according to the setting for “TV電話通話中”.
 - When is pressed (for the main display only)
 - When is pressed (for the Inspiration window only)
 - When or is pressed (for only the Inspiration window while the FOMA terminal is closed)
 - When the power is turned on
 - When a specified alarm or schedule time arrives
 - During Answer Hold (on for about 75 seconds)
 - When Record Message is started (on for about 75 seconds after starting the playback answer messages)
 - When the power is automatically turned on
 - When a call is received (on for about 75 seconds after you receive a call)
 - When mail or Message R/Fs are received and the message reception screen is displayed.
 - When the switch is used for making a call while a switch-equipped earphone/microphone is connected.
- Even when “常時照明” during connection to the AC/DC adapter is set, the FOMA terminal is not lit constantly unless it is connected to an external power source such as AC/DC adapter and then only if power is actually supplied.
- Closing the FOMA terminal causes the following actions:
 - Regardless of the settings, the main display and key lights are turned off.
 - The Inspiration window operates according to the setting.
- Continuously lighting up causes the battery to run out more quickly than usual. To conserve battery life, you can select “通常照明 (低輝度)” for the On mobile setting when continuous key operation is required such as during execution of i- ppli applications, and “節約照明” during data communication as well.

Specifiable items and display methods

Item (Default)	Description
携帯時設定 On mobile (通常照明 (中輝度))	You can select a lighting way for the main display when the battery is not recharged with the AC/DC adaptor. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 通常照明 (高輝度) Normal light (bright): Opening the FOMA terminal or pressing any key turns on the display light very brightly for about 15 seconds and it is dimmed for about 60 seconds. • 通常照明 (中輝度) Normal light: Opening the FOMA terminal or pressing any key turns on the display light normally for about 15 seconds and it is dimmed for about 60 seconds. • 通常照明 (低輝度) Normal light (dim): Opening the FOMA terminal or pressing any key, turns on the display light dimly for about 75 seconds. • 節約照明 Economy light: The main display is not lit.
AC/DCアダプタ接続時 At connection to AC/DC adapter (通常照明)	You can select either “通常照明 Normal light” or “常時照明 Continual light” as the manner of lighting at connection to an external power source. ¹
背面輝度設定 Back DSP brightness (高輝度)	You can select either “高輝度” or “低輝度” for displaying the Inspiration window. Closing the FOMA terminal or pressing  ,  , or  turns on the display light for about 15 seconds. ²
TV電話通話中 During a videophone call (常時照明)	You can select either “通常照明” or “常時照明” as the manner of lighting during a videophone call. ¹
カメラ撮影 For photography (常時照明)	You can select either “通常照明” or “常時照明” as the manner of lighting for photography. ^{1,3}
コード認識中 During code recognition (常時照明)	You can select “通常照明” or “常時照明” as the manner of lighting for the Inspiration window during code recognition by Barcode Reader. ⁴
静止画スライドショー For slide show of still images (常時照明)	You can select either “通常照明” or “常時照明” as the manner of lighting for displaying slide show of still images. ¹
ブラウザ For browser (通常照明)	You can select either “通常照明” or “常時照明” as the manner of lighting for displaying i-mode sites. ¹
動画再生中 For video playback (常時照明)	You can select either “通常照明” or “常時照明” as the manner of lighting during video playback. ¹
キーバックライト Key light (ON)	You can select “ON” or “OFF” for lighting the keys. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ON: Opening the FOMA terminal or pressing any key turns the light on for about 15 seconds. ⁵ • OFF: The keys are not lit.

1. “通常照明” indicates that the display is lit in the brightness set in the On mobile setting for about 15 seconds and then lit dimly for about 60 seconds (however, when “節約照明 (economy light)” is set for the On mobile setting, the display is not lit). “常時照明” indicates that the display is constantly lit during a videophone call or the like. The brightness is determined according to the On mobile setting.

2. While the FOMA terminal is opened, pressing  and  does not turn on the display light. Also, while Key Guard is set with the FOMA terminal closed, pressing , , or  does not turn on the display light.

3. When “常時照明” is set, the display is constantly turned on also while photography is in the Standby status.

4. Normal light indicates that the display is lit by brightness set in the Back Display setting for about 15 seconds. Continual light indicates that the display is constantly lit while in scanning standby.

5. When “節約照明” is set for the On mobile setting, the keys are not lit, neither.

Displaying More Natural Color

The FOMA terminal provides “Natural Color Matrix” that adjusts the main display enabling more natural and beautiful colors. Turn the setting to suit your preferences.

- This function does not affect the Inspiration window.

1 In standby, select “設定” “画面・表示” “ナチュラルカラーマトリックス” from Menu.

2 Select “1.ON” and press  (選択).

Natural Color Matrix is turned on.

- To cancel the setting, select “2.OFF”.

Setting the Size of Image to Be Displayed

You can set whether to enlarge the still images or video clips to be displayed.

- When the Display Size setting is set to “拡大表示ON”, it is effective for the following functions:
 - *Memory Stick Duo*
 - Multimedia
 - Mail (when selecting a file attached to mail)
 - Image Viewer (when displaying the detail)
 - Wake-up animation
- Still images or video clips that are less than 240 x 240 dots are enlarged.:

1 In standby, select “設定” “画面・表示” “表示サイズ設定” from Menu.

2 Select “1.拡大表示ON” and press  (選択).

The Display Size setting is set to “拡大表示ON”.

- To cancel the setting to display it in the same size, select “2.拡大表示OFF”.

Displaying the Prompt after the End of Operation

When Assist Partner is set, a prompt appears in the following cases to allow you to continue to save additional items:

Set item	A prompt appears	Description
電話帳 Phonebook	At the end of a call	When you receive a call from a party not saved in Phonebook, you can save the calling party in Phonebook at the end of the call (see p.57).
ネットワーク 画像 Network image	When saving an image	When an image is saved from a site or mail, you can set the image for use on the Standby screen (see "Application" p.42).
着信音 Ringtone	When saving a melody	When an i-melody is downloaded from a site or a melody in mail or Message R/F is saved, you can set the saved melody for use as a ringtone (see "Application" p.44, 147).

1 In standby, select “設定” “画面・表示” “パートナーアシスト設定” from Menu.



2 Mark the items you want to display the prompt with .

Select or next to items you want to change and press (選択). and are switched.

3 Press (登録).

Assist Partner is set.

When Assist Partner is set

For example, when a caller is not saved in Phonebook, after a call, a prompt appears asking whether to save the caller's number in Phonebook.

- If no operation is performed for about 15 seconds, the prompt automatically disappears and the Standby screen reappears.
- If you have saved or set before receiving a call, the prompt appears lately when the Standby screen reappears.
- When Visual Partner is set, the character image is displayed on the prompt .
- Select “はい” to save the caller and press (選択), the Phonebook Entry screen appears. To not save data, select “いいえ”.

About ID Codes

In addition to the terminal ID number for the various functions of the FOMA terminal, there are ID codes and passwords such as the network ID number used for each option to be signed up and the i-mode password .

- Be sure to keep a separate record of your terminal ID number, network ID numbers and i-mode password. If you forget your ID number or password, you will have to bring your FOMA terminal to a NTT DoCoMo service center to change the ID code or password. You must then present a valid form of identification such as a driver's license to prove your identity.

Terminal ID number

The settings and cancellations of some FOMA terminal functions require entry of an ID code. This ID code is referred to as the terminal ID number. Set your own terminal ID number, so that only you can make settings and cancellations.

Network ID number

Optional services such as Caller ID Notification Service and Dual Network Service require their own ID code. You must select a network ID number when subscribing to optional services. You cannot change the network ID number from your FOMA terminal or other phones.

PIN1 and PIN2 codes

A FOMA Card has two ID codes, PIN1 code and PIN2 code.

Both of the codes are set to "0000" at your first subscription. We recommend that you change the codes to your own numbers (see p.163).

i-mode password


You must enter your i-mode password to add/delete items in My Menu, apply for/cancel message services, and make mail settings. When you first subscribe to i-mode, it is set to "0000". We recommend that you change the password to your own number (see "Application" p.32).

Changing the Terminal ID Number


1 In standby, select “設定” “プライバシー” “暗証番号の変更” from Menu.

2 Enter your current terminal ID number and press  (選択).



- The default terminal ID number is “0000”.
- Entered numbers are masked with a series of “_”.
- If you make a mistake, use  to delete the “_” and reenter the correct number.
- When the entered terminal ID number is not correct, “暗証番号が違います (Wrong ID code is input)” appears followed by the Standby screen.
- When no terminal ID number is entered for 15 seconds, the Standby screen is automatically displayed. Repeat the operation from the beginning.

3 Enter a new terminal ID number and press  (選択).

- The new terminal ID must be 4- to 8-digits. “#” and “*” cannot be used.
- If you make a mistake, use  to delete the number and reenter the correct number.

4 Select “はい” and press  (選択).

- Your terminal ID number is changed.
- To not change it, select “いいえ”.

Setting the PIN Codes

The PIN codes include PIN1 code and PIN2 code.

- The PIN1 Entry ON/OFF setting enables you to specify whether to require entering the PIN1 code when the power is turned on.
- You can change the PIN1 code and PIN2 code to any numbers you like.
- PIN1 code and PIN2 code (see p.35)

[Set PIN1 Entry ON/OFF]

[Default] OFF

Setting to enter the PIN1 code when turning the power on

1 In standby, select “設定” “プライバシー” “PIN1入力ON/OFF設定” from Menu.

2 Select “1.ON” and press  (選択).

- If you select “ON” when the PIN1 Entry ON/OFF setting is on or if you select “OFF” when the setting is off, Step 3 is not necessary.
- To set to not enter the PIN1 code, select “2.OFF”.

3 Enter the PIN1 code and press  (選択).

- Entering PIN1 code is set to be requested.
- The default PIN1 code is “0000”.

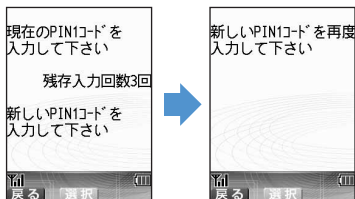
Changing the PIN1 code




- Before changing the PIN1 code, turn on the PIN1 Entry ON/OFF setting.

1 In standby, select “設定” “プライバシー” “PIN1の変更” from Menu.

2 Enter the terminal ID number and press  (選択).

3 Enter the current PIN1 code and a new PIN1 code.



- ① Enter the current PIN1 code and press  (選択).
- ② Enter a new PIN1 code and press  (選択).
 - The default PIN1 code is “0000”.
 - Entered numbers are masked with a series of “_”.
 - Enter a 4- to 8-digit number for the new PIN1 code.
 - If you make a mistake, use  to delete the “_” and enter the correct number.

4 Reenter the new PIN1 code and press  (選択).

The PIN1 code is changed.



- If you could not enter the current PIN1 code correctly, repeat from Step 3. If you fail to enter the current PIN1 code 3 times, the screen for entering the PIN lock cancel code appears (see p.165).
- If the second entry of the new PIN1 code did not match the first entry, repeat from Step 3.

Changing the PIN2 code


1 In standby, select “設定” “プライバシー” “PIN2の変更” from Menu.

2 Enter the terminal ID number and press  (選択).

3 Enter the current PIN2 code and a new PIN2 code.

- ① Enter the current PIN2 code and press  (選択).
- ② Enter a new PIN2 code and press  (選択).

“新しいPIN2コードを再度入力してください (Enter the new PIN2 code again)” is displayed.

- The default PIN2 code is “0000”.
- Entered numbers are masked with a series of “_”.
- Enter a 4- to 8-digit number for a new PIN2 code.
- If you make a mistake, use  to delete the “_” and enter the correct number.

4 Reenter the new PIN2 code and press (選択).


The PIN2 code is changed.

- When you could not enter the current PIN2 code correctly, repeat from Step 3. When you fail to enter the current PIN2 code 3 times, the screen for entering the PIN lock cancel code appears (see p.165).
- If the second entry of the new PIN2 code did not match the first entry, repeat from Step 3.

Entering the PIN1 Code


When PIN1 Entry ON/OFF is set to on, the PIN1 code entry screen appears when turning the power on. Unless you entered the correct PIN1 code, you can neither make a call nor perform communication.

1 Press and hold down to turn the power on.

- According to the services you subscribe to, the service provider selection screen appears. In such a case, select the service provider and press  (選択).

2 Enter the PIN1 code and press (選択).

The Standby screen appears.

- The default PIN1 code is "0000". You can change it to another number (see p.163).
- Entered numbers are masked with a series of "_".
- If you make a mistake, use  to delete the "_" and enter the correct number.
- If you could not enter the correct PIN1 code, you can try again. If you fail to enter the PIN1 code 3 times, the screen for entering the PIN lock cancel code appears (see p.165).

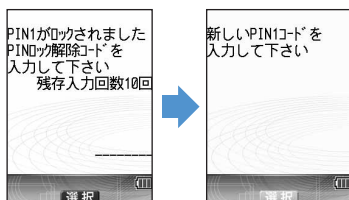
Canceling PIN Lock


If you fail to enter the PIN code 3 times, specify a new PIN code using the following procedure. The PIN code after the change is subsequently enabled.

- If you fail to enter the PIN code 3 times, PIN Lock is set. A message indicating that the PIN code could not be authenticated appears in the screen and another screen for entering the PIN lock cancel code appears.
- The operation method is the same for PIN1 code and PIN2 code.
- The PIN lock cancel code is a 8-digit number that was provided at your subscription. Please keep a separate record (e.g. written copy). Be careful not to reveal it to others. If you forget the PIN lock cancel code or cannot cancel PIN Lock with it, contact a NTT DoCoMo service center.

Example When canceling the PIN1 code lock

1 Enter the PIN lock cancel code and press (選択).



- Entered numbers are masked with a series of “_”.
- If you make a mistake, use  to delete the “_” and reenter the correct number.

2 Enter a new PIN1 code and press (選択).

“新しいPIN1コードを再度入力して下さい (Enter the new PIN1 code again)” is displayed.

3 Reenter the new PIN1 code and press (選択).

The PIN1 code is changed.

- If the second entry of the new PIN1 code did not match the first entry, repeat from Step 2.

When PIN Lock is set

You can enter the PIN lock cancel code up to 10 times. If you could not enter it correctly by your 10th try, the PIN lock cancel code is locked and the Standby screen reappears. In such a case, you cannot cancel the lock of PIN lock cancel code even if you turn the power off and back on.

- If the PIN1 code is locked, you cannot perform any of the following operations that transmit signals:
 - Making and receiving calls
 - Sending and receiving i-mode mail
 - Displaying an i-mode site and receiving Message R/F
 - Displaying the data stored in the FOMA Card
- If the PIN2 code is locked, you cannot request User certificates or use User certificate operation.

About the Lock Functions

The FOMA terminal has various lock functions to prevent others from using it without permission and to prevent others from seeing or changing the personal information in Phonebook and Schedule. You can set multiple lock functions in combination.

Item	Description	Page
オールロック All Lock	Disables the operations from the FOMA terminal including operations of the menu functions to prevent others from using them without permission.	p.167
PIMロック PIM Lock	Disables to display or edit phonebook and schedule entries to prevent others from displaying or falsifying the personal information.	p.168 p.169
ダイヤル発信制限 Keydial Lock	Disables to make a call by pressing the numeric keys.	p.169
履歴表示設定 Set Log Display	Disables to display Redial Data and Call History.	p.170
セルフモード Self Mode	Disables the communication functions such as making/receiving a call as well as sending/receiving mail.	p.171
外部ボタン操作無効 設定 Key Guard	Disables the operation of the Side keys and Rear key when the FOMA terminal is closed to prevent a malfunction.	p.172

Preventing Others from Using the FOMA Terminal

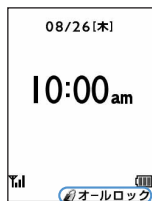
Disables the operations of the FOMA terminal including operations of the menu functions.

- It also prevents you from making or receiving a call.
- You cannot dial emergency numbers such as 110, 119 and 118 while All Lock is set.

1 In standby, press **○ (メニュー)** and hold down **Ⓜ (#-)**.

- Alternatively, you can select by pressing and holding down **○ (ジャンプ)**.

2 Enter the terminal ID number and press **Ⓞ (選択)**.



All Lock is set.

Displayed until All Lock is canceled.

When All Lock is set

- You can perform only the following operations (you cannot make or receive a call):
 - Cancel All Lock
 - Turn the power on and off
- When a call is received while All Lock is set, the terminal neither rings nor vibrates. (The Missed Call icon appears after canceling All Lock. The call is recorded in Call History.) The Rear key does not flash. The caller hears a busy signal and the call is disconnected.
- Even if mail or Message R/F is received while All Lock is set, the mail ringtone or Message R/F tone does not sound. The message reception screen does not appear.
- Even if a schedule entry or an alarm time has been set, the alarm screen is not displayed and the terminal neither sounds the alarm nor vibrates while All Lock is set.
- All Lock is not canceled by turning off the power.

Canceling All Lock

1 In standby, enter your terminal ID number and press **○ (解除)**.

All Lock is canceled.

Note

- If you enter a wrong terminal ID number, an error message is not displayed. Press **Ⓜ (#-)** and repeat the operation from the beginning.
- If you fail to enter the terminal ID number 5 times in a row, the power is automatically turned off. Turn the power back on and enter the correct terminal ID number to cancel All Lock. If you forget the terminal ID number, contact a NTT DoCoMo service center.

Setting PIM Lock

Setting PIM Lock disables the functions including Phonebook, Schedule, mail, and Message R/F to prevent others from viewing or falsifying the personal information. "PIM" means "Personal Information Manager".

- When Reject Unstored Number is set, you cannot set PIM Lock.
- Making a call can be performed with dialing phone number even while PIM Lock is set.

1 In standby, press (メニュー) and hold down .

- Alternatively, you can select “設定” “プライバシー” “禁止動作設定” from Menu (see p.169).

2 Enter the terminal ID number and press (選択).

PIM Lock is set.

When PIM Lock is set

- When PIM Lock is set, you cannot perform the following operations:
 - Search, dial from, save, edit, or delete entries in FOMA Built-in Phonebook or FOMA Card Phonebook
 - All camera functions • All Multimedia functions • All accessory functions
 - All mail functions • All i-mode functions • All i- ppli functions
 - Set Sound • Set Standby Screen including standby image (image, i-motion) and i- ppli Standby screen
 - Set Partner • Set Inspiration Window (Set Back Display) • Wake-up Display
 - Set Alternate Image • Select Answer Hold Screen • Select Call Hold Screen
 - Select Record Message Screen • Set Group • Reject Calls (when “1.する” is selected)
 - Accept Calls (when “1.する” is selected) • Reject Unstored Number • Software Update
 - Confirm Settings • Check Storage Status • Reset Settings
 - Reset i-mode Settings • Reset Mail Settings • Reset SMS Settings
 - Reset i- ppli Settings • Own Number
- Search Phonebook for a forwarding phone number of Call Forwarding Service
- Record messages with the Record Message function or the Quick Record Message function
- Perform the following functions during a videophone call: Switch to Alternate Still Image, Switch Chara-dens, Still Image Memo, Video Memo, and Own Number
- Dial using One-press Dialing, Two-press Dialing, and the switch on a switch-equipped earphone/microphone (Note that it is possible to dial using Phonebook from some external devices. Store any strictly confidential parties in the Secret memory (see p.98).)
- Infrared communication and data forwarding
- When a call is received, information such as the name will not appear on the call reception screen, Redial Data and Call History, etc. Only the phone number is shown.
- Even if you have set the ringtone in the Group setting, the ringtone set in the Sound setting sounds when a call is received.
- Even if mail or Message R/F is received, the mail ringtone or Message R/F tone does not sound and the message reception screen does not appear.
- Even if a schedule entry or an alarm time has been set, the alarm screen is not displayed and the terminal neither sounds the alarm nor vibrates while PIM Lock is set.
- Redial Data and Call History before PIM Lock was set are deleted. You can make a call by Redial Data of the calls originated after the setting and Call History of the calls received after the setting.
- When you have set a melody or image other than the default melody or image for the ringtone or the Standby screen, the settings are reset back to the default while PIM Lock is set. When PIM Lock is canceled, all the settings return to the settings before PIM Lock was set.
- Software Update cannot be performed even if you have reserved a date and time for Software Update.
- PIM Lock is not canceled by turning the power off.

Canceling PIM Lock

- 1 In standby, press **○** (メニュー) and hold down **✳** (マナー http://).
- 2 Enter the terminal ID number and press **◎** (選択).
PIM Lock is canceled.

Set Restrictions

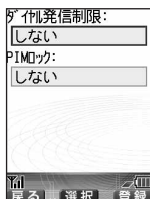
[Default] しない No (for all items)

Setting Keydial Lock

This function makes it impossible to use the numeric keys for making calls.

- Setting Keydial Lock or PIM Lock deletes previous Redial Data and Call History.
- Emergency numbers such as 110, 119 and 118 can still be dialed while Keydial Lock is set. However, do not add “184” or “186”.
- PIM Lock (see p.168)

- 1 In standby, select “設定” “プライバシー” “禁止動作設定” from Menu.
- 2 Enter your terminal ID number and press **◎** (選択).



- 3 Set Keydial Lock.
 - ① Select the “ダイヤル発信制限” field and press **◎** (選択).
 - To set PIM Lock, select the “PIMロック” field and press **◎** (選択).
 - ② Select “する” and press **◎** (選択).
 - To cancel the restriction, select “しない”.
- 4 Press **○** (登録).
Restrictions are set.

When Restrictions are set

• The following operations are restricted:

A: Available NA: Not available

Items set to “する (Yes)”	Operations						
	Search for/dial from Phonebook	Add phonebook entries	Edit phonebook entries	Delete phonebook entries	Dial	Redial	Dial from Call History
ダイヤル発信制限 Keydial Lock	A	NA	NA	NA	NA	A ¹	NA
PIMロック PIM Lock	NA	NA	NA	NA	A	A ¹	A ²

1 Redialing is possible only from Redial Data of the calls made after Restrictions are set.

2 Dialing is possible only from Call History of the calls received after Restrictions are set.

- If you dial numbers 110, 119 and 118 while Keydial Lock is set, Keydial Lock is not canceled by ending the call.
- When Keydial Lock is set, you cannot send or reply Short Messages (SMS) to unstored numbers.
- When Keydial Lock is set, you cannot send or receive the Phonebook data using infrared communication.

Set Log Display

[Default] ON (for all items)

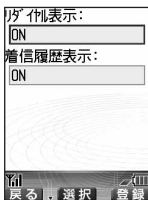
Setting to Not Display Redial Data/Call History

You can set to not display Redial Data and Call History.



- Even if the Log Display setting is off, each call is logged by your FOMA terminal. You can display a stored log by returning the setting to on.

1 In standby, select “設定” “プライバシー” “履歴表示設定” from Menu.

2 Enter your terminal ID number and press  (選択).



3 Select whether to display the log.

- ① Select an item and press  (選択).
- ② Select “ON” or “OFF” and press  (選択).

4 Press  (登録).

Log Display is set.

Note

- When you set “着信履歴表示” to off, recorded messages (Record Message) cannot be played back from Voice Memo Player (see p.70).

Using Self Mode

In the Self Mode mode, the power is on but the FOMA terminal does not send or receive signals. The functions that do not rely on communications are available (Phonebook Entry or Phonebook Search).

- Self Mode cannot be set when the FOMA terminal is sending or receiving signals such as immediately after completing a call.
- If a call is received while Self Mode is set, an announcement informing the caller that the terminal is outside the service area or turned off is played. You can use DoCoMo Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service if you subscribe to the services, as when the power is turned off.
- Note that you can still dial emergency phone numbers 110, 119 and 118 while Self Mode is set. However, do not add "184" or "186". Self Mode is cancelled when the call ends.

1 In standby, select “設定” “通話・通信” “セルフモード” from Menu.

2 Select “1.ON” and press  (選択).

Self Mode is turned on.

- To cancel the setting, select “2.OFF”.

When Self Mode is set

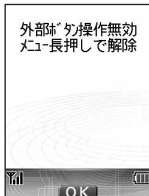
- **self** indicates that Self Mode is on. The following operations cannot be performed:
 - Make or receive calls
 - Connect to i-mode
 - Receive Message R/F
 - Check New SMS
 - Use *Phone to (AV Phone to)*¹, *Mail to*² or *Web to*
 - Perform communication using i- ppli application
 - Use Software Update
 - Perform packet communication, 64K data communication and data forwarding
 - Receive or send mail
 - Connect to Internet
 - Check New Message
 - Perform network service operations
- 1 You can make calls to numbers 110, 119 and 118 stored in Message R/Fs and screen memos.
2 You can compose mail but cannot send it.
- Self Mode is not canceled by turning the power off.

Protecting Your Terminal Against Accidental Key Presses


Key Guard keeps you from inadvertently activating a function should you happen to press the Side keys or Rear key when the FOMA terminal is closed.

- You can use the Side keys and Rear key when the FOMA terminal is open.

1 In standby, press and hold down (メニュー).



A confirmation screen appears for about 2 seconds followed by the Standby screen. After this operation, you cannot use the Side keys and Rear key when the FOMA terminal is closed.

- When the FOMA terminal is closed, the Key Guard icon () appears on the Inspiration window. (The icon is not displayed in the main display.)

When Key Guard is set

- Even when the FOMA terminal is closed, you can use the Side keys or Rear key to perform the following operations (see p.26):
 - Answer Hold
 - Quick Record Message
 - In-call Voice Memo
 - Start using the camera when the FOMA terminal is open and after closing it, take a still image/video clip and quit taking it (except during a videophone call)
 - Stop the alarm tone or mail ringtone, etc.
- Key Guard is not canceled by turning the power off.

Canceling Key Guard

1 In standby, press and hold down (メニュー).

Key Guard is canceled.

Automatically Turning On Your FOMA Terminal

The FOMA terminal can be set so that it automatically turns on at a specified time. When the specified time is reached, a tone (pattern 2) sounds for about 3 seconds and the power automatically turns on.

- Auto Power On cannot be set when the date and time have not been set.
- In locations where the use of mobile phones is prohibited, such as inside hospitals, other medical institutions and airplanes, be sure to cancel Auto Power On as well as to turn off your FOMA terminal.

1 In standby, select “設定” “時計・時刻” “自動電源ON” from Menu.

A selection screen appears asking whether to perform Auto Power On.

2 Select “1.毎日 (Daily)” or “2.1回のみ (Only 1 time)” and press (選択).

- To cancel Auto Power On, select “3.しない”.

3 Use to to enter the time and press (確定).

- Entering the time (see p.45)

Note

- When the FOMA terminal is on at the specified time, the power is not turned on even when the specified time is reached. If “1回のみ” is set, Auto Power On is canceled.
- If the date or time is adjusted after “1回のみ” is set for Auto Power On, Auto Power On is canceled.
- If Auto Power On and Off are set to the same time, Auto Power On takes precedence.
- No tone sounds when Manner Mode or Drive Mode is set.
- The sound level specified in Ring Volume is normally used for the Auto Power On tone. When “レベル0” is set the tone sounds at “レベル1”, and when “Step Up” or “Step Down” is set the tone sounds at “レベル4”.

Automatically Turning Off Your FOMA Terminal

The FOMA terminal can be set so that it automatically turns off at a specified time.

- Auto Power Off cannot be set when the date and time have not been set.

1 In standby, select “設定” “時計・時刻” “自動電源OFF” from Menu.

A selection screen appears asking whether to perform Auto Power Off.

2 Select “1.毎日 (Daily)” or “2.1回のみ (Only 1 time)” and press (選択).

- To cancel Auto Power Off, select “3.しない”.

3 Use to to enter the time and press (確定).

- Entering the time (see p.45)

Note

- If the specified time is reached when the FOMA terminal is in other than standby, the power turns off when the Standby screen reappears.
- When the FOMA terminal is not on at the specified time, the power is not turned off even when the specified time is reached. If “1回のみ” is set, Auto Power Off is canceled.
- If the date or time is adjusted after “1回のみ” is set for Auto Power Off, Auto Power Off is canceled.
- If Auto Power On and Off are set to the same time, Auto Power On has priority.

Alarm Time

[Default] なし None

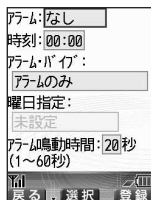
Setting the Alarm to Sound at a Specific Time

You can set the FOMA terminal to sound an alarm or vibrate at a specified time.



- An alarm time cannot be set when the date and time have not been set.
- You cannot set an alarm time while PIM Lock is set.

1 In standby, select “アクセサリ” “アラーム” from Menu.





- The default setting appears on the left screen.



2 Select the date for setting.

- ① Select the “アラーム” field and press  (選択).
- ② Select “毎日 (Daily)”, “1回のみ (Only 1 time)”, or “曜日指定 (Day of week)” and press  (選択).
 - To cancel an alarm time, select “なし”. Alternatively, you can select “曜日指定” and set a day of the week to “未設定”.

3 Set the time.





- ① Select the “時刻” field and press  (選択).
- ② Use  to  to enter a time and press  (確定).
 - Entering the time (see p.45)

4 Set alarm/vibrator.








- ① Select the “アラーム・バイブ” field and press  (選択).
- ② Select any of “アラームのみ (Alarm only)”, “バイブのみ (Vibration only)”, or “アラーム + バイブ (Alarm+Vibration)” and press  (選択).

5 Set a day of the week.


You can set it only when you have selected “曜日指定” in Step 2.

- ① Select the “曜日指定” field and press  (選択).
- ② Use  to  to enter a day of the week.
 - Multiple days can be selected.
 - The selected days are indicated by “ ”.
 - When the numeric key corresponding to a selected day is pressed, “ ” disappears and the selection is canceled.
- ③ Press  (設定).

6 Set the alarm ring time.

- ① Select the “アラーム鳴動時間” field and press  (選択).
- ② Use  to  to enter the time and press  (確定).
 - 20 seconds is set by default.
 - You can set a time period between 1 and 60 seconds.
 - Use  to increase or decrease the time.
 - If you make a mistake, use  to delete the number and reenter the correct number.
 - If you enter 0 and press  (確定), it is set to 1 second.

7 Set Snooze.

- ① Select the “スヌーズ (Snooze)” field and press  (選択).
- ② Select “する” and press  (選択).
 - To not set Snooze, select “しない”.

8 Press (登録).

An alarm time is set.


Saving Schedule Entries

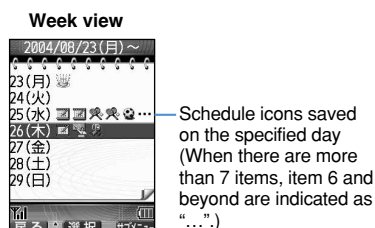
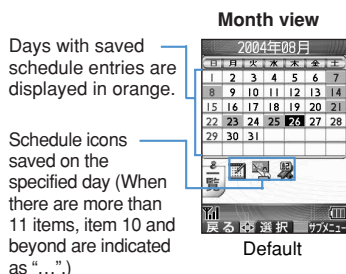
You can save schedule entries.

- You cannot save schedule entries when the date and time have not been set.
- Maximum number of items that can be saved: 100 activities (There are no restrictions on the number of items that can be saved per day and the number of days that can be saved.)
- You cannot save any schedule entry while PIM Lock is set.
- You can save activities scheduled between January 1, 2004 and December 31, 2023.

1 In standby, select “アクセサリ” “スケジュール” from Menu.

The calendar screen appears.




- The layout of the calendar screen can be switched between month view and week view. To switch from month view to week view, select “1.週表示” from the submenu. To return to month view, select “1.月表示” from the submenu.
- You can press  to toggle between the previous and next month view (when month view is used) or the previous and next week view (when week view is used).



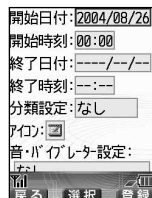
2 Select the date and press (選択).



When you have selected a date with no entry, “スケジュールなし (No schedule entry)” appears.

- The schedule entry appears in case it is saved in the selected date. For details about editing the schedule entry, see p.179.
- To display a schedule entry for which the Secret setting is enabled, select “3.シークレット表示” from the submenu and press  (選択). Enter the terminal ID number and press .
- You can use  to switch the screen between the previous and the next day.

3 Select “1.新規作成” from the submenu.



The Schedule Entry screen appears.

4 Set the start date, start time, end date, and end time.

- ① Select each field and press (選択).
- ② Use to to enter a date or time and press (確定).
 - Entering the date (see p.45)
 - Entering the time (see p.45)
 - The schedule entry cannot be saved when the end date and end time is set before the start date and start time.

5 Set the type.

- ① Select the “分類設定” field and press (選択).
- ② Select an item and press (選択).
 - Select any of “なし (None)”, “プライベート (Private)”, “休日 (Holiday)”, “旅行 (Trip)”, “仕事 (Business)”, or “会議 (Meeting)”.

6 Select an icon.

- ① Select the “アイコン” field and press (選択).
- ② Select an icon and press (選択).
 - You can select from among 72 icons.



7 Set sound/vibrator.

- ① Select the “音・バイブレーター設定” field and press (選択).
- ② Select an item and press (選択).
 - You can select either “なし (None)”, “音のみ (Sound only)”, “バイブのみ (Vibration only)”, or “音 + バイブ (Sound+Vibration)”.

8 Set the repetition setting.

- ① Select the “繰り返し設定” field and press (選択).
- ② Select an item and press (選択).
 - Select either “なし (None)”, “毎年 (Yearly)”, “毎月 (Monthly)”, “毎週 (Weekly)”, or “毎日 (Daily)”.

9 Mark with to enable the Secret setting.

Select or next to the “シークレット設定” field and press (選択).
 and are switched.


10 Enter the details.

- ① Select the “内容” field and press (選択).
- ② Enter the details.
 - Up to 200 single-byte or 100 double-byte characters can be entered. You cannot save the schedule entry when no characters is entered in this field.

11 Press (登録).





The schedule entry is saved.



When a schedule entry is saved

- When you have saved a schedule entry for a certain day,  appears in the Standby screen on that day. However, if the Secret setting is enabled for all schedule entries on that day, the icon does not appear.
- The Schedule screen is displayed when the scheduled time is reached while in standby or during a call. If the Secret setting is enabled for a schedule entry, the Schedule screen is not displayed and “予定の時間になりました (Scheduled time has come)” appears when the scheduled time is reached.



The icon disappears when quitting the Schedule screen.

- When sound or vibrator is set, an alarm tone or vibration notifies you about the activity while the Schedule screen is displayed. Press  (OK) or wait about 20 seconds for the alarm tone or vibration to end and the previous screen to reappear. (Alternatively, you can press  (Rear key), , or  (Side C) to stop the alarm tone or vibration.)
- When the scheduled time arrives during any of the following, the previous screen reappears after an alarm tone or vibration:
 - While displaying the edit screen, such as the Phonebook Entry screen or Compose Mail screen
 - While displaying site, screen memo or received mail item
 - While Barcode Reader is active, etc.

- When the scheduled time is reached during a call, you cannot hear the other party's voice and the other party cannot hear your voice while the alarm sounds or the terminal vibrates.
- When the power of the FOMA terminal is not on at the specified time, and while PIM Lock or All Lock is set, the Schedule screen is not displayed, the alarm does not sound and the terminal does not vibrate.
- When the number of characters in a schedule entry exceeds one screen, you can press  or  to move the display range.
- Changing the alarm tone (see p.138) • Adjusting the volume of alarm tone (see p.136)

Editing the saved schedule entry



Saved icon
Saved contents

① Show the schedule entries.

- Follow Steps 1 - 2 in *Saving Schedule Entries* (see p.177).

② Select a schedule entry and press (選択).

The Schedule Entry screen appears.

- For a repeated activity, the scheduled date set as the repetition setting appears in the “開始日付” field.

③ Edit the schedule entry.

- Repeat from Step 4 in *Saving Schedule Entries* (see p.178).


Note

- In month view, Saturdays are indicated in blue, Sundays and holidays are in red. Note that the screen display does not change even if holidays are changed or created. The holidays are based on the Law Concerning National Holidays and a law that revises part of the Old Age People's Welfare Law (law no. 59, 2001) (as of May 2004).
- The alarm does not sound but the terminal vibrates in the Manner mode. (The terminal also vibrates when “音のみ” is set.)
- The alarm does not sound (the terminal does not vibrate) in the Drive mode.
- When the sound/vibrator is set to “なし” or “音のみ”, the terminal does not vibrate even if the Vibrator function is on.
- When an alarm time and a schedule entry are set to the same time, Alarm Time and then Schedule operate, in that order.
- When Auto Power On and a schedule entry are set to the same time, the Schedule screen appears after Wake-up Display.

Deleting saved schedule entries

To delete a schedule entry

1 Select a schedule entry in the Schedule display screen, and select “2.一件削除” from the submenu.

- Alternatively, you can press and hold down  to delete the entry.

2 Select “はい” and press  (選択).

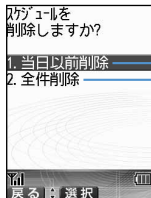
The schedule entry is deleted.

- To cancel the operation, select “いいえ”.

To delete saved schedule entries by the day

1 Display the calendar screen.


2 Select the date and select “2.削除” from the submenu.




- Alternatively, you can press and hold down  to delete the schedule entries.

Deletes all entries before the specified day (includes the entries for the specified day).

Deletes all schedule entries.

3 Select either “1.当日以前削除” or “2.全件削除” and press  (選択).

4 Select “はい” and press  (選択).

The schedule entries are deleted.

- To cancel the operation, select “いいえ”.

Note

- To delete the schedule entry set as the repetition setting, select “一件削除” or “全件削除”.
- If the Secret setting is enabled for the schedule entry, select “シークレット表示” (see p.177) before deleting it.

Saving Your Own Name, Mail Address and Others

- The saved name, mail address and image are displayed in the Own Number display screen.
- Own Number is not displayed while PIM Lock is set.

1 In standby, select “でんわ” “自局番号” from Menu.



- Your mail address saved appears in the “メールアドレス” field. If your name (or reading) and image are saved, they can be displayed using . (Other informations are not displayed on this screen. You can confirm them on the edit screen.)
- Alternatively, you can press (メニュー) and to display it.

2 Select “1.編集” from the submenu.

3 Enter your terminal ID number and press (選択).



4 Save or edit your information.

- Use the same procedure as for saving phonebook entries (see p.94).
- Up to 32 single-byte or 16 double-byte characters can be entered in the “姓 (Family name)” and “名 (First name)” field.
- The informations in “電話番号1”, “ダイヤル種別1”, “グループ名”, “メモリ番号” and “シークレットメモリ登録” cannot be changed.
- If you change your i-mode mail address, the mail address shown on the Own Number display screen is not automatically changed. Save the new mail address.

5 Press (登録).

The information is saved.

Note

- When you press and select “でんわ” “自局番号” during a voice call or you select “14.自局番号” from the submenu during a videophone call, the Own Number display screen appears but you cannot edit your information.

Executing Frequently Used Functions Quickly

Registering frequently used menu items in Jump Menu makes it easier and faster to execute the functions.

- Maximum number of menu items that can be registered: 9

Registering a menu item in Jump Menu

1 In standby, press **○** (ジャンプ).



Jump Menu appears.

- The following menu items are preset by default:
 - 音声メモプレーヤー (Voice Memo Player)
 - 音の設定 (Sound setting)
 - スケジュール (Schedule)
 - アラーム (Alarm)
 - メモリースティック (Memory Stick)
 - Bookmark
 - マルチメディア (Multimedia)
 - ソフト一覧 (Software List)

2 Select a position to register a menu item, and select “1.登録” from the submenu.



- Menu items provided by default can be overwritten.
- When registering a new jump menu item, select the position where no item is displayed.
- **1** to **9** are assigned to positions where the menu items are registered. Pressing these keys executes the menu items.

3 Select a menu and press **○** (選択).

The menu items corresponding to the selected menu appear.

4 Select a menu item and press **○** (選択).

The menu item is registered in Jump Menu.

- If another menu item appears, repeat Step 4.

Executing a function from Jump Menu

1 In standby, press **○** (ジャンプ).

2 Select a menu item and press **○** (選択).

The selected menu item is executed.

- Available menu items depend on the service you subscribe to.
- Alternatively, you can press the numeric key assigned to the menu item to execute it.

Deleting a menu item from Jump Menu

1 In standby, press **○** (ジャンプ).

2 Select a menu item and select “2.一件削除” from the submenu.

- Alternatively, you can press and hold down **Ⓞ** (クリア) to delete it.
- All jump menu items can be deleted by selecting “3.全件削除” from the submenu.

3 Select “はい” and press **◎** (選択).

The menu item is deleted from Jump Menu.

- To cancel the operation, select “いいえ”.
- If you delete the menu item that has been saved by overwriting the default menu item, the menu item is not reset to the default.

In-call/Standby Voice Memo

Recording the Other Party's Voice or Your Voice

You can record your voice in standby or the voice of the party you are talking to during a call.

- Maximum number of voice recordings that can be recorded: 10
- Maximum recording time: 2 minutes in total

Recording a standby voice memo

1 In standby, select “アクセサリ” “音声メモレコーダー” from Menu.



The remaining recording time

The terminal beeps and recording starts. Speak into the microphone.

- Alternatively, you can press **○** (Rear key) to record your voice while the FOMA terminal is open.
- When 10 voice recordings have been recorded or the remaining recording time is less than 10 seconds, a prompt appears asking whether to delete all recorded messages and voice memos. To delete all voice recordings, select “はい” and press **◎** (選択). Then, try again. To cancel the operation, select “いいえ”.

2 Press **◎** (停止) to end recording.


The terminal beeps.

- Alternatively, you can press **○** (Rear key) or **Ⓞ** (クリア) to end the recording.

Recording an in-call voice memo

1 During a call, press  (Rear key).

The terminal beeps and recording starts. The other party's voice is recorded.

- “通話中音声メモ録音中 (Recording in-call voice memo)” is displayed on the screen.
- You can use the function while the FOMA terminal is closed.
- When 10 voice recordings have been made or the remaining recording time is less than 10 seconds, a prompt appears asking whether to delete all recorded messages and voice memos. To delete all voice recordings, select “はい” and then press  (選択). Then, try again. To cancel the operation, select “いいえ”.

2 Press  (停止) to end recording.

The terminal beeps.

- Alternatively, you can press  (Rear key) to end the recording.


To record announcements such as changed phone number guidance (Record Function while Dialing)

When  (録音) appears while dialing, you can press  (録音) to record a message such as changed phone number announcement. To end recording, press  (停止). Alternatively, you can press  (Rear key) to start/end recording.

Note

- When the total recording time reaches the limit or an incoming call is received during recording, the recording stops automatically.
- Playing or deleting voice memos (see p.70)
- While you are recording an in-call voice memo, recording may be interrupted due to poor signal conditions.
- The beeps at the starting and ending of recording will not be heard by the other party in this function.
- You cannot use In-call Voice Memo during a videophone call. To record the other party's voice and image during a videophone call, see p.80.

Setting the Function to Execute When Pressing Side Key C

You can set the function to execute when pressing and holding down  (Side C) in standby.

- 1 In standby, select “設定” “画面・表示” “サイドボタン機能切替” from Menu.**
- 2 Select either “1. i モード問合せ (Check New Message)” or “2. バーコードリーダー (Barcode Reader)” and press  (選択).**
Select Side Key Act is set.

Confirm Settings

Checking the Status of Settings

You can check current settings of the basic functions.

- You cannot check the settings during PIM Lock.



- 1 In standby, select “設定” “通話時間・状況確認” “設定状況確認” from Menu.**
- 2 Use  to display items.**
• Alternatively, you can use  or  to switch items.
- 3 Check the setting status and press  (OK).**

Reset Settings

Resetting Phone Settings to the Defaults

You can reset phone settings to the state it had at the time of purchase (defaults).

- You cannot reset the settings while PIM Lock is set.

- 1 In standby, select “設定” “設定リセット” “基本機能リセット” from Menu.**
- 2 Enter your terminal ID number and press  (選択).**
- 3 Select “はい” and press  (選択).**
The settings are reset to their defaults.
• To cancel the operation, select “いいえ”.

Settings and items that do not return to the defaults

Note that the settings and data items given below cannot be reset by this function:

- Example:
- Phonebook
 - Predictive Conversion list
 - PIN1 Entry ON/OFF setting
 - Saved common phrases
 - Short Message (SMS) Settings
 - USB Mode setting
 - Saved schedule entries
 - Data saved in the FOMA terminal
 - Call History
 - Call time
 - Group setting
 - i-mode Settings
 - i- ppli Settings (excluding i- ppli volume)
 - Recorded messages and voice memos
 - Own Number information
 - Data saved in *Memory Stick Duo*
 - Date and time
 - ID codes
 - Self Mode
 - Mail Settings (excluding mail ringtone)
 - Key Guard

The settings of network services such as Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service cannot be reset. Redial Data is reset (deleted) by this function.

- Resetting i-mode Settings (see "Application" p.52)
- Resetting Short Message (SMS) Settings (see "Application" p.172)
- Resetting i- ppli Settings (see "Application" p.80)
- Deleting data saved in "マルチメディア" of the FOMA terminal (see "Application" p.96, 236, 258, 264)
- Resetting Mail Settings (see "Application" p.196)

Settings that return to the defaults after a reset

"カメラ" "カメラ設定"

Function	Default
静止画	Mode: メール添付 (携帯) 撮影サイズ (オープン): 128X96 圧縮モード (オープン): スタンダード 保存場所 (オープン): 本体メモリ 撮影サイズ (クローズ): 128X96 圧縮モード (クローズ): スタンダード 保存場所 (クローズ): 本体メモリ コンパクトライト調節: 強 シャッター音: シャッター音1 セルフタイマー音: セルフタイマー音1 セルフタイマー秒数: 5秒
動画	Mode: メール添付 品質モード (オープン): スタンダード 保存場所 (オープン): 本体メモリ 品質モード (クローズ): スタンダード 保存場所 (クローズ): 本体メモリ コンパクトライト調節: 強 シャッター音: シャッター音1 セルフタイマー音: セルフタイマー音1 セルフタイマー秒数: 5秒

"設定" "音・バイブレーター"

Function	Default
音の設定	着メーション/着信音: 着信音 着信音: パターン1 TV電話着メーション/TV電話着 信音: TV電話着信音 TV電話着信音: パターン2 メール着信音: パターン3 メール鳴動時間: 10秒 メッセージR着信音: パターン4 メッセージR鳴動時間: 10秒 メッセージF着信音: パターン4 メッセージF鳴動時間: 10秒 アラーム音: パターン5 非通知着信音・通知不可着信音・ 公衆電話着信音: 着メーション/ 着信音
音量調節	着信音量・受話音量・アラーム音 量: レベル4 i アプリ音量・メロディ再生音 量: レベル13 動画再生音量: レベル4
保留音設定	応答保留音: 応答メッセージ1 通話中保留音: 保留メッセージ
バイブレーター	OFF (着信音: バイブレーターパターン1 TV電話着信音: バイブレーターパ ターン2 メール着信音: バイブレーターパ ターン3 メッセージR着信音・メッセージF 着信音: バイブレーターパターン4 アラーム音: バイブレーターパターン5 非通知着信音・通知不可着信音・ 公衆電話着信音: 着信音に連動)
オリジナルマナー モード	しない (伝言メモ: しない バイブレーター: ON 着信音量: レベル0)
ボタン確認音	ON
充電確認音	ON

“設定” “画面・表示”

Function	Default
待受画面設定	デジタル時計 (Large) 12/24h切替: 12-hour system Display format: 中央表示
パートナー設定	チョコボ (Chocobo)
パートナーアシスト設定	ON (for all items)
フォトコール設定	両画面表示
インスピレーション ウィンドウ	背面画面設定: デジタル時計 (Large) 省電力設定: 非表示モード 相手表示設定の音声 / TV電話発着 信: 名前 + 電話番号 相手表示設定のメール着信: アドレス+件名
ウェイクアップ表示	ウェイクアップアニメーション
表示サイズ設定	拡大表示OFF
文字サイズ設定	通常
照明設定	携帯時設定: 通常照明 (中輝度) AC / DCアダプタ接続時: 通常照明 背面輝度設定: 高輝度 TV電話通話中: 常時照明 カメラ撮影・コード認識中・静止 画スライドショー: 常時照明 ブラウザ: 通常照明 動画再生中: 常時照明 キーバックライト: ON
コントラスト調節	レベル10 (for all items)
ナチュラルカラーマトリックス	ON
アイコンメニュー説明ON/OFF	ON
サイドボタン機能切替	i モード問合せ

“設定” “TV電話”

Function	Default
発信時自画像送信	ON
代替画像設定	表示切替設定: キャラ電優先 キャラ電選択: ブンブン (Dimo) ² 画像選択: TV電話代替画像
音声自動再発信設定	OFF
応答保留画面選択	内蔵画像
通話保留画面選択	内蔵画像
伝言メモ画面選択	内蔵画像
画像表示設定	両方
TV電話画面切替	拡大
画像品質設定	標準

“設定” “時計・時刻”

Function	Default
自動電源ON	しない (00 : 00) ¹
自動電源OFF	しない (00 : 00) ¹

“設定” “プライバシー”

Function	Default
禁止動作設定	しない (for all items)
電話帳指定着信拒否	しない
電話帳指定着信許可	しない
無音着信時間設定	0秒
非通知着信設定	着信する (for all items)
登録外電話番号拒否	しない
履歴表示設定	ON (for all items)
メールセキュリティ	しない
メモリスティックロック	しない

“設定” “文字入力”

Function	Default
定型文登録	一行表示
文字入力方式切替	モード1 (かな方式)
推測変換設定	ON

“設定” “伝言メモ”

Function	Default
伝言メモ	しない (8秒) ¹

“設定” “通話・通信”

Function	Default
オート着信機能設定	しない (2秒) ¹
クロース動作設定	切断
再接続アラーム	アラーム音なし
通話品質アラーム	高いアラーム音
ノイズキャンセラ	ON
イヤホン/スピーカ切替	イヤホン + スピーカ
エコーキャンサー設定	する
サブアドレス設定	ON
プレフィックス設定	009130010

“でんわ”

Function	Default
リダイヤル	Redial Data : Deleted List : 三行表示
着信履歴	List : 三行表示

“アクセサリ”

Function	Default
アラーム	アラーム...なし 時刻...00 : 00 アラーム・パイプ...アラームのみ アラーム鳴動時間...20秒 スヌーズ...しない
メモリスティック (カメラ画像)	List : Picture list Order : Ascending order of the date and time of shooting
メモリスティック (イメージ)	List : Picture list

Others

Function	Default
Manner Mode	Turned off
Drive Mode	Turned off
Jump Menu	1. 音声メモプレーヤー 2. 音の設定 3. Bookmark 4. スケジュール 5. マルチメディア 6. アラーム 7. ソフト一覧 8. メモリスティック

1 These values indicate the defaults when an item other than “しない”, “OFF”, or “なし” is selected.

2 If “ブンブン (Dimo)” is deleted, the setting is not reset to the default. “表示切替設定” is set to “画像優先”.

Setting the Carrier to Use

You can set PLMN (carrier name) that provides FOMA services.


- You cannot set a carrier in the Self mode.

When using DoCoMo, you do not need to set this function.

1 In standby, select “サービス” “PLMN設定” from Menu.

2 Select “1.ネットワーク自動検索 (Network automatic search)” or “2.ネットワーク手動選択 (Network manual search)” and press  (選択).

PLMN is set.


- When you selected “2.ネットワーク手動選択”, select “1.ドコモ” on the NW operator screen and press  (選択).

Setting the Ringtone to Sound Only from the Earphone

When a switch-equipped earphone/microphone is connected, you can set the ringtone to sound only from the earphone or from both the earphone and the speaker.

1 In standby, select “設定” “通話・通信” “イヤホン / スピーカ切替” from Menu.

A selection screen appears asking where the ringtone is set to sound.

2 Select “1.イヤホンのみ” and press  (選択).

“イヤホンのみ” is set.

- To set the ringtone to sound from both the earphone and the speaker, select “2.イヤホン + スピーカ”.

Note

- The volume of the ringtone from the earphone can be changed using the Ring Volume setting of Adjust Volume (see p.61, 136).
- If no plug is connected to the earphone/microphone jack, the ringtone sounds from the speaker of your FOMA terminal even if “イヤホンのみ (Earphone only)” is set.
- Even if “イヤホンのみ (Earphone only)” is set, the ringtone sounds from both the speaker and the earphone when about 20 seconds elapse in the following cases:
 - After a call is received (if a melody is set as the ringtone or the Videophone ringtone)
 - After mail or Message R/F is received
 - While you are selecting a melody for “着信音”, “TV電話着信音”, “メール着信音”, “メッセージR着信音”, or “メッセージF着信音” in the Sound setting
- The ringtone sounds from the earphone even if Manner Mode is set (depending on the Manner Mode Selection settings) or Ring Volume is set to level 0.

Using a Switch-equipped Earphone/Microphone (optional)

A switch-equipped earphone/microphone (optional) allows you to make and receive calls simply by pressing a switch. Also, with a stereo earphone set, you can listen to melodies in stereo sound.

- You can use an earphone/microphone with the following product or combination. Note, however, that some products are only available in certain regions.
 - Flat switch-equipped earphone/microphone P01/P02
 - Switch-equipped earphone/microphone P001/P002 + earphone jack adapter P001
 - Flat stereo earphone set P01
 - Stereo earphone set P001 + earphone jack adapter P001
 - Earphone terminal P001 + earphone jack adapter P001
(This combination requires a separate stereo earphone.)
- Even if an earphone/microphone is connected, the ringtone is heard from the speaker by the default setting. For details about setting the ringtone to not sound from the speaker, see p.188.
- You cannot make a call using the switch on the switch-equipped earphone/microphone in the following cases. Cancel or change the settings before the operation:
 - When the phone number is not saved in Memory number 699, or Memory number 699 is stored in the Secret memory
 - When PIM Lock is set

Connecting the switch-equipped earphone/microphone

Remove the cap from the earphone/microphone jack on the side of the FOMA terminal and insert the plug of the switch-equipped earphone/microphone.

- Insert the plug of the switch-equipped earphone/microphone into the jack firmly. If the plug is not firmly seated, you may not hear the other party clearly.

Making a call using the switch

By default, you can use the switch on the switch-equipped earphone/microphone to dial “電話番号 1” in Memory number 699.

- You can also use this function when the FOMA terminal is closed.

1 Press and hold down the switch on the earphone/microphone.

The phone number saved as “電話番号 1” in Memory number 699 is dialed.

2 To end the call, press and hold down the switch on the earphone/microphone.

The call ends.

Note

- Extend the cord of the switch-equipped earphone/microphone. Do not wind it around the FOMA terminal.
- The clicking sound generated when power is turned on is not a malfunction.
- Noise may be generated if the cord of the switch-equipped earphone/microphone comes too close to the antenna of the FOMA terminal.
- You can turn off a busy signal by pressing and holding down the switch of the switch-equipped earphone/microphone.

Receiving a call using the switch

- 1 When you receive a call, press and hold down the switch on the earphone/microphone.**

The call is answered.

- 2 To end the call, press and hold down the switch on the earphone/microphone.**

The call ends.

Note

- When you receive a videophone call while you are using a switch-equipped earphone/microphone, pressing the switch allows you to answer the call with an alternate image automatically. For details about switching between an alternate image and your self image, see p.85.

Answering another call while talking

- This function requires a subscription to Call Waiting Service.

- 1 When a second call beep is heard during a call, press and hold down the switch on the earphone/microphone.**

The first call is put on hold and the second call is answered.

- You can receive only a voice call during a voice call.

- 2 To end the current call, press and hold down the switch on the earphone/microphone.**

The current call ends, call time is displayed.

A ringtone sounds indicating that another call is on hold and the call reception screen appears.

- 3 Press and hold down the switch on the earphone/microphone.**


The call that has been put on hold is resumed.

Answering a Call Automatically with the Switch-equipped Earphone/Microphone Connected (optional)

When a switch-equipped earphone/microphone is connected, you can set the terminal to answer a call automatically.

- If no plug is connected to the earphone/microphone jack or during a call, a call is not auto-answered even if Auto Answer is set.

1 In standby, select “設定” “通話・通信” “オート着信機能設定” from Menu.



2 Select “1.する” and press  (選択).



- To cancel the setting, select “2.しない”.

3 Use  to  to set the time period (shift time) after which the terminal answers a call and press  (設定).

Auto Answer is set.

- A time period between 0 and 120 seconds can be set.
- Use  to increase or decrease the time.
- If you make a mistake, use  to delete the number and reenter the correct number.
- When you set Auto Answer while using Record Message, Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, set the shift time for the Auto Answer setting that is shorter than that of other functions. If a longer time is set, Record Message or the answering services operates and you cannot answer the call.

When Auto Answer is set

- When you receive a call or videophone call while you are using a switch-equipped earphone/microphone, you can answer the call after the shift time has elapsed.
- If you connect a switch-equipped earphone/microphone or others while the ringtone of a voice or videophone call sounds, you can answer the call immediately.
- When a videophone call is auto-answered, an alternate image is sent to the other party. For details about switching between an alternate image and your self image, see p.85.
- Note that if 0 second is set, the FOMA terminal neither sounds the ringtone nor vibrates when a call is received.

Note

- If the shift time for the Auto Answer setting and Record Message Shift Time are set to the same, the Auto Answer setting has priority.

If You Forget the Key Sequences

Descriptions of key sequences as well as operations using the Easy Selector Plus can be shown on the display.




1 In standby, select “設定” “ヘルプ” from Menu.






2 Use to select the function and press (選択).

The description of the selected function appear.

Descriptions in Help Function

- In Help Function, the keys of the Easy Selector Plus ( ,  , ) are described as follows, and operations corresponding to the keys are surrounded by []:

Description in Help	Operation to be performed
(左)	Pressing the left key ()
(中央)	Pressing the center key ()
(右)	Pressing the right key ()

Example: [メニュー] (左) の長押し Press and hold down  (メニュー)


Services Available from Your FOMA Terminal

Service	Phone number
Collect Call Service (reverse charge calls)	106
Directory Assistance Service (English speaking operators available) for general subscriber phone and DoCoMo mobile phone numbers (information and call charges are applicable) (Unlisted phone numbers cannot be given)	104
Telegrams (telegram charges are applicable) 8 a.m. to 10 p.m.	115
Time (charged)	117
Weather (charged)	Area code+177
Police emergencies (free of charge)	110*
Police-general consultation (charged)	#9110
Fire and ambulance (free of charge)	119*
Marine emergencies - accident reports (free of charge)	118

* When calling 110 or 119 emergency services from a mobile phone:

- ① Tell the operator you are calling from a mobile phone
- ② Tell the phone number of your mobile phone (so that the police or fire department can call you back for further information)
- ③ Explain your location clearly

Note

- If you use Collect Call Service (106), the call charge is billed to the receiver together with a commission of 90 yen (94.5 yen plus tax) per call (as of March 2004).
- If you use Directory Assistance Service (104), a service charge of 100 yen (105 yen plus tax) is billed together with the call charge. Note that this service is available without charge for those handicapped with sight or upper limb. For details, inquire at 116 (NTT sales center) from a general subscriber phone (as of March 2004).
- Depending on the area you may not be connected to the relevant emergency service. If you cannot contact the local emergency services, use a payphone or general subscriber phone.
- You may not be able to call 116 (NTT sales center). Other services such as Dial Q2, Message Dial and credit card calls are not available. However, credit card calls can be made from a general subscriber phone or payphone to a DoCoMo mobile phone.
- Toll-free numbers without the  sign may not be able to be called from a mobile phone and PHS.

About Multiaccess

Your FOMA terminal can make a voice call and packet communication at the same time. It can further provide Short Message Service (SMS) at the same time.

You can use a maximum of the 3 circuits shown below at the same time:

Voice call	1 circuit
Packet communication (i-mode, i-mode mail, packet communication with your FOMA terminal connected to a PC, and so on.)	1 circuit
Short Message Service (SMS)	1 circuit

Note

- During Multiaccess, each individual circuit is billed.
- Since Videophone and 64K data communication do not support Multiaccess, you cannot use voice call or i-mode during a videophone call or 64K data communication. However, you can receive messages in Short Message Service (SMS) (but you cannot send messages).
- For details about combinations of Multiaccess, see p.265.



Main operations that can be performed with Multiaccess

Connecting to i-mode during a voice call

1 Press during a voice call.

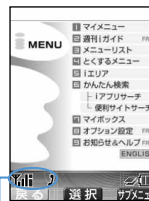
The active list appears.

2 Display i-mode sites.




- ① Select “i モード” and press  (選択).
i-mode Menu appears.
- ② Select “Menu” and press  (選択).
iMenu appears.



During a voice call



Connecting to a voice call and i-mode at the same time

- You can press , select “音声通話” or “i モード”, and press  (選択) to switch between the talking screen and the site display screen.
- When site display ends, your FOMA terminal returns to the talking screen.
- To finish talking with the site display screen displayed, switch to the talking screen and press .

Sending i-mode mail during a voice call

1 Press during a voice call.

The active list appears.

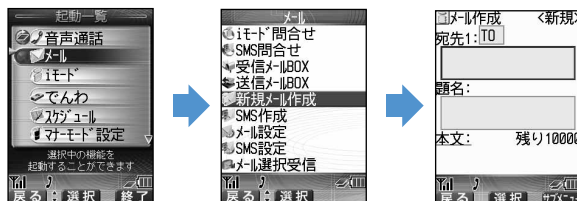
2 Compose i-mode mail.





① Select “メール” and press (選択).

Mail Menu appears.

② Select “新規メール作成” and press (選択).

The Compose i-mode Mail screen appears, and you can create and send i-mode mail.



- You can press , select “音声通話” or “メール”, and press  (選択) to switch between the talking screen and the Compose i-mode Mail screen.
- After sending i-mode mail, your FOMA terminal returns to Mail Menu. When pressing  (戻る), returns to the talking screen.
- To finish talking with the Compose i-mode Mail screen displayed, switch to the talking screen and press .

Receiving i-mode mail during a voice call

1 The mail icon appears when you receive mail during a voice call.

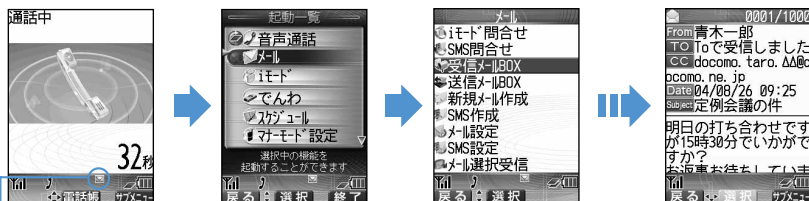
2 Display the received mail.



① Press , select “メール”, and press (選択).





Mail Menu appears.

② Select “受信メールBOX” and press (選択).

The folder list of Inmail box appears. You can display the received mail from the folder list.



During receiving,  blinks.
When receiving is completed,
 is displayed.

- When you press  while receiving mail and select “メール受信” from the active list, the receiving screen appears.
- You can press , select “音声通話” or “メール”, and press  (選択) to switch between the talking screen and the received mail display screen.
- To finish talking with the received mail display screen displayed, switch to the talking screen and press .

Making a voice call during i-mode or packet communication


- To make a voice call during i-mode or packet communication, use Phonebook, Redial Data, or Call History. You cannot use the numeric keys to make a call.
- You cannot make a videophone call with this operation.
- In addition to the following operations, you can also make a call using *Phone to (AV Phone to)* during i-mode (see “Application” p.46).

Example When making a voice call during i-mode using Phonebook


1 Press during i-mode.

The active list appears.

2 Make a call.

① Select “**でんわ**” and press  (選択).

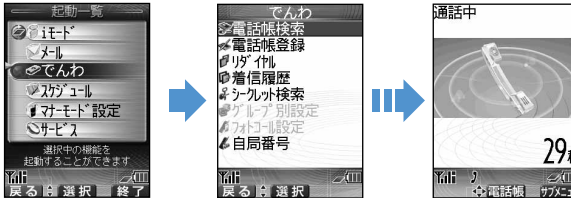
The phone menu appears.



② Select “**電話帳検索**” and press  (選択).

The Phonebook Search screen appears.

③ **Make a voice call by searching Phonebook.**

When the call is connected, the talking screen appears.



- When the call ends, your FOMA terminal returns to the site display screen.
- You can press , select “音声通話” or “i モード”, and press  (選択) to switch between the talking screen and the site display screen.

Receiving a voice call during i-mode or packet communication



- You cannot receive a videophone call. (Even when a videophone call is received, the call reception screen does not appear and the call is not connected. The call is recorded in Call History.)

Example When receiving a voice call during i-mode

1 If there is an incoming voice call during i-mode, the call reception screen appears.

2 Press .




When the call is connected, the talking screen appears.

- When the call ends, your FOMA terminal returns to the site display screen.
- You can press , select “音声通話” or “i モード”, and press  (選択) to switch between the talking screen and the site display screen.

Performing packet communication during a voice call

1 Dial from a PC during a voice call.


Packet communication starts.



- You can press , select “音声通話” or “データ通信”, and press  (選択) to switch between the talking screen and the screen for packet communication.
- When packet communication ends, the talking screen reappears.
- To end the voice call without disconnecting packet communication, switch to the talking screen and press .

About Multitask

Your FOMA terminal can execute multiple functions at the same time. For example, it can display mail while saving entries in Phonebook or display and edit Phonebook during a voice call.

Executing functions with Multitask

When you press  during a voice call or while using i-mode, i-ppli or mail functions or saving phonebook entries, the active list appears. You can start another function by selecting from the active list.


- The following functions are not stopped even you execute another function (Multitask compatible function).
 - Voice call
 - i-mode (displaying site/screen memo)
 - Packet communication
 - i-ppli
 - Displaying received mail, sent/unsent mail, or Message R/F
- Screen that has the entry fields or selected item field such as the Phonebook Entry screen, Compose Mail screen, and so on
- In some functions such as Redial or Call History, which do not lose the data even if it stops, it ends when another function is executed.
-  appears when one Multitask compatible function is executed, and  appears when two or more Multitask compatible functions are executed.

Example When displaying received mail while saving entries in Phonebook

1 Press while displaying the Phonebook Entry screen.

The active list appears.

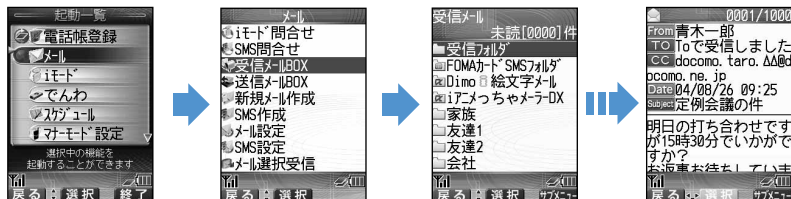
2 Display the received mail.

- ① Select “メール” and press  (選択).

Mail Menu appears.

- ② Select “受信メールBOX” and press  (選択).

The Inmail box folder list appears. You can display the received mail from the folder list.



To switch between executing functions



① Press , select “電話帳登録” from the active list, and press  (選択).

The Phonebook Entry screen appears.

- To switch to the received mail display screen, select “メール”.
- Depending on the function, you cannot switch to another function without ending the executing function. For example, if you execute another function while running an i- ppli application, you need to exit the executing function to return to the i- ppli screen (except when you have run the i- ppli application from a site or mail using i- ppli To or you have started the mail interlocked type i- ppli from the Inmail box or Outmail box).



To end an executing function

Display the screen of the function to be ended, and press  (戻る) to end the function.


Alternatively, you can press and hold down  (戻る) or press . When the function is ended, the screen of another executing function appears.

To end all executing functions

- A voice call, a videophone call, and the i- ppli Standby screen do not end.

① Press  and  (終了).



A prompt appears.

② Select “はい” and press  (選択).

All executing functions are ended.


- To cancel the operation, select “いいえ”.

Note


- You cannot execute the function that is being executed.
- New functions may not be executed unless you end the current operation depending on the combination of the functions. For the combination during Multitask, see p.266.
- You cannot display the active list by pressing  while making or receiving a voice call, making a videophone call, putting a call on hold (Answer Hold or Call Hold), recording a message (Record Message), editing an image, recording or saving video or i-motion, or performing infrared communication, 64K data communication or Software Update. You cannot also use  while processing *Memory Stick Duo*. Please reperform it after ending the function or processing under execution.
- Depending on the number or combination of executing functions, the amount of memory for executing functions becomes insufficient. In this case, when you attempt to execute a new function, a message indicating that the function cannot be executed due to insufficient memory appears. Please reperform it after ending the function under execution.
- When you execute another function during transmission, the operation speed of the FOMA terminal may be temporarily slow due to the communication processing.

Layout of the active list



 : Executing function (switchable)

 : Executing function (not switchable)¹

 : A linked function executing (not switchable)²

1 You need to exit the executing function to switch to the function indicated by the icon.



2 This icon appears when the function indicated by the icon executes another function such as Internet Connections by *Web to* from mail.

About displayed items

The following items are always displayed, even when the corresponding functions are not executing. The operation when the item is selected differs depending on whether the function is executing or not.

Item	When the function is not executed	When the function is executed
メール Mail	Displays Mail Menu.	Switches to the executing mail function.
i モード i-mode	Displays i-mode Menu.	Switches to the executing i-mode function.
でんわ Phone	Displays the “でんわ” menu.	
スケジュール Schedule	Displays the calendar screen of the Schedule function.	Switches to the executing Schedule function.
マナーモード設定 Set Manner Mode	Sets or cancels Manner Mode.	
サービス Network services	Displays the “サービス” menu.	Switches to the executing network services function.

Note: Item that cannot be executed is indicated in gray, and you cannot select it.

The following items are displayed only while the corresponding functions are executing. You can switch to the screen of the executing function by selecting the item. (You cannot switch to the function indicated by  and .)

Item	Description
設定 Setting	Displayed while executing each function of the “設定” menu.
i アプリ i- ppli	Displayed while running i- ppli.
マルチメディア Multimedia	Displayed while executing each function of the “マルチメディア” menu.
カメラ Camera	Displayed while changing the title or the file name of images or video/i-motion clips, or editing images from the “カメラ” menu.
バーコ - ドリ - ダ - Barcode Reader	Displayed while scanning a concatenated QR code with Barcode Reader or editing the title of scan results.
アラーム Alarm	Displayed while setting an alarm time.
メモリースティック Memory Stick	Displayed while creating or editing a folder for <i>Memory Stick Duo</i> .
電話帳登録 Phonebook Entry	Displayed while saving entries in Phonebook.
電話帳検索 Phonebook Search	Displayed while creating or editing a folder for <i>Memory Stick Duo</i> during a copy to <i>Memory Stick Duo</i> from the Phonebook Search result.
自局番号 Own Number	Displayed while editing Own Number.
メール受信 Mail reception	Displayed while receiving mail or displaying the message reception screen.
データ通信 Data communication	Displayed during data communication.
音声通話 Voice call	Displayed during a voice call.

Network Services

Network Services That Can Be Used from a FOMA Terminal

Service	Description	Monthly charge	Subscription
Voice Mail Service	When the FOMA terminal cannot receive signals or is turned off, the caller can leave a message (see p.203).	Charged	Mandatory
Call Waiting Service	The first call can be put on hold while the second call is answered (see p.213).	Charged	Mandatory
Call Forwarding Service	The incoming call is forwarded (see p.208).	Free of charge	Mandatory
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	Nuisance calls are automatically blocked (see p.216).	Charged	Mandatory
Caller ID Notification Service	A called party is notified of your phone number (see p.217).	Free of charge	Not required
Caller ID Display Request Service	For incoming calls with no Caller ID displayed, plays a message indicating that you cannot answer the phone and ends the call (see p.219).	Free of charge	Not required
Drive Mode	For incoming calls, plays a message indicating that you cannot answer the phone because you are driving (see p.62).	Free of charge	Not required
Dual Network Service	You can use the FOMA terminal and the mova with a single phone number (see p.221).	Charged	Mandatory
English Announcement Service	You can listen to announcements in English (see p.222).	Free of charge	Not required
Short Message Service (SMS)	You can send and receive text messages with other FOMA terminals (see "Application" p.116).	Free of charge	Not required
i-mode	You can send and receive i-mode mail and connect to the i-mode sites or Internet web sites (see "Application" p.110, 16).	Charged	Mandatory


Using the network services

For how to subscribe to these services, contact the following:

<p>For inquiries (in English)</p>  <p>0120-005-250 (toll free)</p> <p><small>*Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs</small></p>	<p>For inquiries (in Japanese only)</p> <p>No prefix 151 (toll free)</p> <p><small>*Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSs</small></p>  <p>0120-800-000 (toll free)</p> <p><small>*Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs</small></p>
--	---

* Please confirm the phone number before you dial.

"Voice Mail Service", "Call Waiting Service", "Call Forwarding Service", "Nuisance Call Blocking Service", and "i-mode" can be applied for from e-site.

 <p>Access via i-mode (free of packet communication charge) iMenu 9 お知らせ&ヘルプ(News & Help) ドコモ eサイト (DoCoMo e-site)</p> <p>Access via PC, etc.</p> <p>➤ *Access from the DoCoMo web site! http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp オンライン手続き/照会サービス(Online applications/inquiry service) ドコモeサイト(DoCoMo e-site)</p> <p>➤ *Access e-site directly! http://www.esite.nttdocomo.co.jp/</p> <p>You need your "network ID number" that you specified at the time of application to use e-site via i-mode.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> * Packet communication is free of charge to use e-site from i-mode. Note that certain services may charge packet communication fees. * You need an user ID and password to access e-site via your PC. * If you do not have or you forget your "network ID number", "user ID", and "password", please contact the above DoCoMo service center. * There are cases where the site may not be available due to system maintenance, etc.

Using Voice Mail Service






When your FOMA terminal cannot receive signals or is turned off, or you cannot answer a call, a caller's message can be left at the Voice Mail Service Center. The caller will be requested to leave a message.

- The message can be checked anywhere in Japan.
- Voice Mail Service is an optional service that you need to subscribe to before use. Monthly fees are charged when you use this service.
- When you are outside the service area, you cannot use Voice Mail Service. Try again at a location where signal conditions are better.
- For details, see the "FOMA Network Services User's Guide".

About Voice Mail Service

- A maximum of 20 messages (up to 3 minutes per each) can be recorded.
- Messages are saved for 72 hours.
- An absence announcement function is also available for just explaining that you cannot answer calls.
- When a call arrives while your FOMA terminal is able to receive it, the ringtone sounds and the call reception screen appears.
- You can answer a call while the ringtone is sounding. The length of ringing (ring time) can be changed (see p.205).
- A second call beep sounds during a call or a ringtone sounds during packet communication when another call is received.
- Even if you subscribe to both Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service, you cannot use both of these services at the same time. Voice Mail Service is deactivated automatically when Call Forwarding Service is activated. (Afterwards, even if you deactivate Call Forwarding Service, Voice Mail Service does not automatically restart.)
- If a hidden-ID call (voice call) is received while Caller ID Display Request Service is activated, an announcement is played requesting that the caller show the Caller ID (messages are not saved). This service does not work when a videophone call is received.
- You can manipulate Voice Mail Service from a touch tone general subscriber phone or payphone.
- Even when Voice Mail Service is activated, videophone calls are not connected to the Voice Mail Service Center. The calls are received as videophone calls.


Basic procedure for Voice Mail Service

Step 1 Save an answer message (initial setting     .

Step 2 Activate the service.

Step 3 A caller leaves a message.

Step 4 Play the recorded message.

- When you want to skip the answer message and leave a message such as when you are in a hurry, press  while the answer message is playing.
- You can let Voice Mail Service answer the incoming call (see p.207).

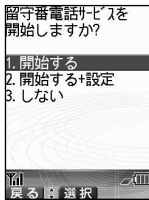
Voice Mail Service charges


When you use Voice Mail Service, you need to pay the call charges for playing recorded messages in addition to the monthly fees. For details, see the "FOMA Network Services User's Guide".

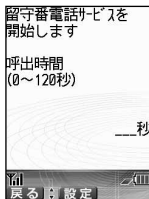
Activating Voice Mail Service

You can set the ring time.

- 1** In standby, select “サービス” “留守番電話” “4.サービス開始” from Menu.





- 2** Select “2.開始する + 設定” and press  (選択).



- When the ring time is already set, select “1.開始する”. Voice Mail Service is activated.
- To cancel the operation, select “3.しない”.

- 3** Use  to  to enter the ring time and press  (設定).

Voice Mail Service is activated.


- A time period between 0 and 120 seconds can be set.
- Use  to increase or decrease the number.
- If you make a mistake, press  to delete the number and reenter the correct number.

Note

- To give priority to Voice Mail Service, when using Record Message simultaneously, set a shorter ring time for Voice Mail Service than Record Message Shift Time.

Deactivating Voice Mail Service

- 1** In standby, select “サービス” “留守番電話” “5.サービス停止” from Menu.

- 2** Select “1.する” and press  (選択).

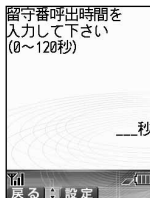
Voice Mail Service is deactivated.

- To cancel the operation, select “2.しない”.

Setting the ring time

Set the ring time before playing back an answer message when Voice Mail Service is activated.

- 1 In standby, select “サービス” “留守番電話” “3.呼出時間設定” from Menu.



- 2 Use **0** (わろの じむ) to **9** (ら WXYZ) to enter the ring time and press **⊙** (設定).

The ring time is set.

- A time period between 0 and 120 seconds can be set.
- Use **⊙** to increase or decrease the number.
- If you make a mistake, press **⊗** (クリア) to delete the number and reenter the correct number.

Checking the settings

Check the Voice Mail Service settings and ring time. You can make various settings after checking.

- 1 In standby, select “サービス” “留守番電話” “6.設定確認” from Menu.

- 2 Select “1.する” and press **⊙** (選択).

The settings are displayed.

- To cancel the operation, select “2.しない”.

To set the ring time

- ① Select “1.呼出時間設定” from the submenu.

- Follow Step 2 in *Setting the ring time*.

To activate the service

- ① Select “2.サービス開始” from the submenu.

- Repeat from Step 2 in *Activating Voice Mail Service* (see p.204).


To deactivate the service

- ① Select “3.サービス停止” from the submenu.

- Follow Step 2 in *Deactivating Voice Mail Service* (see p.204).


- 3 Check the contents and press **⊙** (OK).

Playing a recorded message

When a message is recorded,  (where the number indicates the number of messages) appears in the Standby screen.

- Displayed number is the number that is announced when playing back a new message (1417). Saved messages are not included in it.

1 In standby, select “サービス” “留守番電話” “1.メッセージ再生” from Menu.

2 Select “1.する” and press  (選択).

- To cancel the operation, select “2.しない”.


3 Follow the instructions.

The recorded message is played.

Setting Voice Mail Service by following the instructions

You can set Voice Mail Service by following the instructions.

1 In standby, select “サービス” “留守番電話” “2.サービス設定” from Menu.

2 Select “1.する” and press  (選択).


- To cancel the operation, select “2.しない”.


3 Follow the instructions.


Checking if there is a new message

You can check anytime you want to see if any messages have been stored at the Voice Mail Service Center.

1 In standby, select “サービス” “留守番電話” “7.メッセージ問合せ” from Menu.

2 Select “1.する” and press  (選択).

When a new message is recorded,  (where the number indicates the number of messages) appears in the Standby screen.

- To cancel the operation, select “2.しない”.
- When the incremental tone is on, the notification tone informs you of any new message.
- Displayed number is the number that is announced when playing back a new message (1417). Saved messages are not included in it.
- If you save or delete a message stored at the Voice Mail Service Center after checking,  (where the number indicates the number of messages) disappears. Alternatively, you can delete the icon from Menu (see p.207).

Note

- The incremental tone does not sound if Ring Volume is set to level 0.
- You may not be able to check for messages depending on signal conditions.
- Once you check for messages at the Voice Mail Service Center, messages retained after that may not be checked for a period of time.


[Default] ON

Sounding the incremental tone when the number of messages is incremented

When you check if there is any new message, you can make the notification tone to sound to inform you that the number of messages is increased.

- As the notification tone, pattern 1 is played once. The volume is in accordance with the setting for Ring Volume.


1 In standby, select “サービス” “留守番電話” “8.件数増加鳴動設定” from Menu.

2 Select “1.ON” and press  (選択).


The incremental tone is turned on.


- To cancel the setting, select “2.OFF”.

Deleting the Voice Mail icon

You can delete ² (where the number indicates the number of messages) that appears in the Standby screen.

1 In standby, select “サービス” “留守番電話” “9.表示消去” from Menu.

2 Select “1.する” and press  (選択).

² (where the number indicates the number of messages) disappears.

- To cancel the operation, select “2.しない”.

Note

- Even if you delete the Voice Mail icon, the messages stored at the Voice Mail Service Center are not deleted.

Letting Voice Mail Service answer the incoming call

Even if Voice Mail Service is not activated, you can temporarily use Voice Mail Service.

1 While the phone is ringing, select “2.留守番電話” from the submenu.

The received call is connected to the Voice Mail Service Center.

- This operation does not activate Voice Mail Service.

Note

- When you are calling 110, 119, or 118, this function is not available.

Using Call Forwarding Service

When your phone cannot receive signals or is turned off, or you cannot answer a call, the call can be automatically forwarded to your office or home.

- This service is available within the FOMA service areas all over Japan.
- Call Forwarding Service is an optional service that you need to subscribe to before use. No monthly fees are charged.
- When you are outside the service area, you cannot use Call Forwarding Service. Try again at a location where signal conditions are better.
- For details, see the “FOMA Network Services User’s Guide.”

About Call Forwarding Service

- You can make or receive calls even when the service is activated.
- When a call arrives while your FOMA terminal is able to receive it, the ringtone sounds, and the call reception screen appears.
- You can answer a call while the ringtone is sounding. The ring time can also be changed (see p.209).
- Even if you subscribe to both Call Forwarding Service and Voice Mail Service, they cannot be used at the same time. Call Forwarding Service is deactivated automatically when Voice Mail Service is activated. (Afterwards, even if you deactivate Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service does not automatically restart.)
- If a hidden-ID call (voice call) is received while Caller ID Display Request Service is activated, an announcement is played requesting that the caller show the Caller ID (calls are not forwarded). This service does not work when a videophone call is received.
- While Call Forwarding Service is activated, you cannot receive the incoming calls by Collect Call Service (reverse charge calls).
- You can manipulate Call Forwarding Service from a touch tone general subscriber phone or payphone.
- Only one item can be registered for the forwarding destination.
- When a videophone call is received, even if Call Forwarding Service is activated, it is not operated unless you set the forwarding destination to conformed 3G-324M (see p.72) Videophone compatible equipments. Please check the phone of the forwarding destination before setting.
- The call forwarding announcement is not played at the videophone caller side.

Basic procedure for Call Forwarding Service

- Step 1** Set a forwarding phone number.
- Step 2** Activate the service.
- Step 3** A call is received at your FOMA terminal.
- Step 4** If not answered, the call is automatically forwarded.
- Step 5** The caller is connected to the forwarding phone number.

- The incoming call is forwarded (see p.212).

Call Forwarding Service charges

No monthly charge + Call charge only

Call charge



Note1: The call charge to the forwarding destination is charged based on the distance from the area in which the location of the FOMA terminal is registered to the forwarding destination.

Note2: You are not charged while setting the forwarding phone number, activating/deactivating the service or setting the ring time.

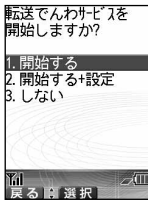
Note

- The call charge to the forwarding destination is billed to the Call Forwarding Service subscriber even if the subscriber's FOMA terminal cannot receive signals or is turned off.
- If you activate Call Forwarding Service while being away from home and turn off the FOMA terminal, it may incur high call charge. Turn the FOMA terminal off and back on when you return. The location of the FOMA terminal is automatically registered.

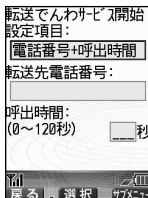
Activating Call Forwarding Service

You can set the forwarding phone number and ring time.

- 1 In standby, select “サービス” “転送でんわ” “1.サービス開始” from Menu.



- 2 Select “2.開始する + 設定” and press (選択).




- When the forwarding destination and ring time are already set, select “1.開始する”. Call Forwarding Service is activated.
- To cancel the operation, select “3.しない”.

- 3 Select a setting item.




- ① Select the “設定項目” field and press (選択).
- ② Select an item and press (選択).
 - If you select “呼出時間のみ”, proceed to Step 5.

4 Set the forwarding phone number.









To enter the phone number directly

- ① Select the “転送先電話番号” field and press  (選択).
- ② Enter a phone number.
 - Start from the area code (you can enter up to 26-digit numbers).

To search for the phone number in Phonebook

- ① Select the “転送先電話番号” field and select “2.アドレス帳” or “3.シークレットデータ” from the submenu.
 - Alternatively, you can search by selecting the “転送先電話番号” field, pressing  (選択), and pressing  with no characters having been entered.
- ② Search for phonebook entries.
 - Searching Phonebook (see p.106)
- ③ Select a phone number and press  (選択).

5 Set the ring time.

- ① Select the “呼出時間” field and press  (選択).
- ② Use   ~   to enter the time and press  (確定).
 - A time period between 0 and 120 seconds can be set.
 - Use  to increase or decrease the number.
 - If you make a mistake, press  to delete the number and reenter the correct number.

6 Select “1.登録” from the submenu .


Call Forwarding Service is activated.

Note

- A toll-free number or 3-digit phone number such as 110 cannot be set as the forwarding phone number.
- The owner of the forwarding phone number can request that call forwarding be canceled.
- Note that selecting a PBX, pager* or fax number as the forwarding phone number may confuse the caller.
- To give priority to Call Forwarding Service when using Record Message simultaneously, set a shorter ring time for Call Forwarding Service than Record Message Shift Time.



* In January 2001, DoCoMo's pager (Pocket Bell) was renamed “QUICKCAST”.

Deactivating Call Forwarding Service

- 1 In standby, select “サービス” “転送でんわ” “2.サービス停止” from Menu.
- 2 Select “1.する” and press  (選択).
Call Forwarding Service is deactivated.
• To cancel the operation, select “2.しない”.

Checking the settings

Check the setting status and forwarding phone number of Call Forwarding Service.

- 1 In standby, select “サービス” “転送でんわ” “4.設定確認” from Menu.
- 2 Select “1.する” and press  (選択).
The settings are displayed.
• To cancel the operation, select “2.しない”.
- 3 Check the contents and press  (OK).

Changing the forwarding destination

Call Forwarding Service can be activated simultaneously with the changed forwarding destination, if changed while the service is deactivated.

- 1 In standby, select “サービス” “転送でんわ” “3.転送先変更” from Menu.



- 2 Set the forwarding phone number.
• Follow Step 4 in *Activating Call Forwarding Service* (see p.210).

3 Select “1.登録” from the submenu.

4 Select “1.転送先変更のみ” and press (選択).

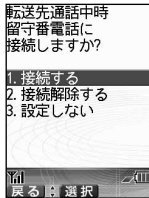
The forwarding phone number is set.

- Call Forwarding Service can be activated with the changed forwarding destination, if “2.転送先変更 + 開始” is selected while the service is deactivated.
- To cancel the operation, select “3.しない”.

Handling by Voice Mail Service if the forwarding destination is busy

- To handle by Voice Mail Service, you need to subscribe to Voice Mail Service before use. Even if Voice Mail Service is activated, videophone calls are not connected to the Voice Mail Service Center. The calls are received as videophone calls.

1 In standby, select “サービス” “転送でんわ” “5.転送先通話中時設定” from Menu.



2 Select “1.接続する” and press (選択).

When the forwarding destination is busy, Voice Mail Service will handle the call.

- To release the connection, select “2.接続解除する”.
- To cancel the operation, select “3.設定しない”.

Handling an incoming call by Call Forwarding Service

Even if Call Forwarding Service is not activated, you can temporarily use Call Forwarding Service.

1 While the terminal is ringing, select “3.転送でんわ” from the submenu.

Incoming calls are forwarded.

- This operation does not activate Call Forwarding Service.

Note

- When you are calling 110, 119, or 118, this function is not available.

Using Call Waiting Service


A beep indicates that a second voice call is received while you are talking on the phone (second call beep). The first call can be put on hold while the second call is answered.

- Activate the Call Reception during Talking setting and set Second Call Handling to “通常着信” before using Call Waiting Service (see p.224). If they are not set correctly, you cannot answer the second call even if Call Waiting Service is activated.
- You can put the first voice call on hold and make a second voice call.
- Call Waiting Service is an optional service that you need to subscribe to before use. Monthly fees are charged when you use this service.
- When you are outside the service area, you cannot use Call Waiting Service. Try again at a location where signal conditions are better.
- For details, see the “FOMA Network Services User’s Guide.”


About Call Waiting Service

- Call Waiting Service is not available in any of the following cases:
 - While calling a number such as 104 (Directory Assistance Service), 110, 119, 118 or 117
 - While dialing or the receiver’s phone is ringing
 - While calling a 4-digit phone number such as 1411 (to activate Voice Mail Service) and 1420 (to deactivate Call Forwarding Service) for the network service settings
 - While being connected to the Voice Mail Service Center for the message playback (if you subscribe to Voice Mail Service)
 - When a videophone call is received during a voice call or a videophone call (The second call is recorded in Call History. You can end the first call and answer the second call (see p.76). If the second call is not answered, the Missed Call icon appears.)
- On-hold time is charged to the caller.
- If a hidden-ID call is received while Caller ID Display Request Service is activated, an announcement requesting a Caller ID will be played. (Call Waiting Service cannot be used.)
- You cannot make a videophone call during a call.



Activating Call Waiting Service

- 1 In standby, select “サービス” “キャッチホン” “1.キャッチホン開始” from Menu.**
- 2 Select “1.する” and press  (選択).**
Call Waiting Service is activated.
 - To cancel the operation, select “2.しない”.

Deactivating Call Waiting Service





- 1 In standby, select “サービス” “キャッチホン” “2.キャッチホン停止” from Menu.**
- 2 Select “1.する” and press  (選択).**
Call Waiting Service is deactivated.
 - To cancel the operation, select “2.しない”.

Checking the setting



- 1 In standby, select “サービス” “キャッチホン” “3.設定確認” from Menu.
- 2 Select “1.する” and press  (選択).
The setting is displayed.
• To cancel the operation, select “2.しない”.
- 3 Check the contents and press  (OK).

Main operations

Putting the first call on hold and answering the second call

- 1 During a call, press  .
The first call is put on hold and the second call is answered.
- 2 To switch the party to talk to, press  .
The current call is put on hold and the call that has been put on hold is resumed.
- 3 To end a call, press  .
The current call is terminated and a ringtone sounds indicating that another call is on hold.
- 4 Press  .
The call that has been put on hold is resumed.

Ending the first call and answering the second call

- 1 During a call, press  .
The ringtone for the second call sounds.
- 2 Press  .
The second call is answered.

Putting the first call on hold and calling another party

1 During a call, enter the phone number of another party and press .

When the call is connected, the multiconnection screen appears.


The first call is put on hold.

- You can also use Phonebook, Redial Data, Call History, One-press Dialing or Two-press Dialing to make a second call.

To switch back to the first call

- ① Press .

The first call is resumed.

- You can switch between the first call and the second call by pressing .

To end the current call

- ① Press .

The current call ends, and a ringtone indicates that another call is on hold.

- ② Press .


The call that has been put on hold is resumed.

To end the call on hold

- ① Select “2.保留相手切断” from the submenu.

The call that has been on hold ends. Call Time is displayed for about 2 seconds, followed by the talking screen.

Note

- When another call is received during multiconnection, no ringtone sounds and the call is recorded in Call History (the Missed Call icon appears).
- When the current call is disconnected by the other party during multiconnection, if you press the Any Key Answer function key or  (OK), a ringtone sounds indicating that another call is on hold.
- The call charge while a caller is put on hold is charged to the caller.
- A second call can be made during a call only when Call Waiting Service is activated.


Using Nuisance Call Blocking Service

Nuisance calls can automatically be rejected. Setting this service immediately after a nuisance call will play an announcement to reject the call and end the call each time you receive a call from the same phone number.


- Up to 30 phone numbers can be saved.
- Nuisance Call Blocking Service is an optional service that you need to subscribe to before use. Monthly fees are charged when you use this service.
- When you are outside the service area, you cannot use Nuisance Call Blocking Service. Try again at a location where signal conditions are better.
- For details, see the “FOMA Network Services User’s Guide”.

Saving the phone number that you last talked

1 After receiving a nuisance call, in standby, select “サービス” “迷惑電話ストップ” “1.着信拒否登録” from Menu.

2 Select “1.する” and press  (選択).







The phone number is saved as rejected calls.

- The phone number of the caller without the Caller ID can also be saved.
- To cancel the operation, select “2.しない”.
- If 30 phone numbers are already saved, a prompt appears asking whether to overwrite the oldest phone number. If you want to overwrite it, select “1.する” and press  (選択).

Note

- The phone number of the call that you last received and answered is saved. If the call is not answered, the phone number will not be saved. The phone number that you called is not saved.
- You cannot check or inquire about the phone number saved as reject calls. It is recommended to keep a separate record of the phone number saved as reject calls.

Specifying the phone number and saving it

1 In standby, press       .

2 Follow the instructions.

Note

- International calls cannot be saved as rejected calls. They are not recorded in Call History.
- An incoming call from the phone number saved as rejected calls does not sound the ringtone and is not recorded in Call History.
- When any of the following services is activated, a call from the phone number saved as rejected calls is handled as described below. However, if a videophone call comes from the phone number saved as rejected calls, the announcement rejecting a call is not played and the call ends:

Service/function	Handling of calls from the phone number saved as rejected calls
Voice Mail Service	Plays an announcement of call rejection (messages are not saved).
Call Forwarding Service	Plays an announcement of call rejection (calls are not forwarded to the forwarding destination).
Call Waiting Service	Plays an announcement of call rejection.
Caller ID Display Request Service	Plays an announcement of call rejection (calls without the Caller ID are also rejected).
Drive Mode	Plays an announcement of call rejection (the announcement for Drive Mode is not played).

Canceling saved phone numbers

Phone numbers you saved can be canceled one at a time from the last saved number. You can also cancel all the phone numbers.

1 In standby, select “サービス” “迷惑電話ストップ” “3.一件登録削除” from Menu.

- Select “2.全登録削除” to cancel all the phone numbers.

2 Select “1.する” and press (選択).

- The last saved phone number is canceled. (The phone numbers saved earlier remain.)
- To cancel the operation, select “2.しない”.

Caller ID Notification Service

Notifying the Called Party of Your Phone Number

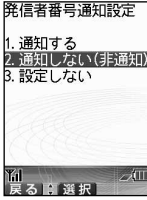
When you make a call, this service allows you to display your phone number on the display of the other party's phone.

- By default, your phone number is not displayed on the display of the other party's phone.
- Your Caller ID is very private information. Consider carefully before you change the setting of Caller ID Notification Service.
- Your Caller ID can be displayed only on other devices such as digital mobile phones that can display a Caller ID.
- When you are outside the service area, you cannot use Caller ID Notification Service. Try again at a location where signal conditions are better.
- You do not need to subscribe to Caller ID Notification Service. No monthly fees are charged.
- For details, see the “FOMA Network Services User's Guide”.

Notifying of the Caller ID

1 In standby, select “サービス” “発信者番号通知” “1.番号通知設定” from Menu.

2 Enter your network ID number and press (選択).



- The network ID number is a 4-digit ID number required for using network services (see p.161).

3 Select “1.通知する” and press (選択).

Your Caller ID notification is set.

- To not notify of your Caller ID, select “2.通知しない (非通知)”.
- To cancel the operation, select “3.設定しない”.

Checking the setting

1 In standby, select “サービス” “発信者番号通知” “2.設定確認” from Menu.

2 Select “1.する” and press (選択).

The setting is displayed.

- To cancel the operation, select “2.しない”.

3 Check the contents and press (OK).

Note

- If the other party makes a call with the Caller ID notified, the other party’s phone number is displayed on the display. (If the other party is saved in Phonebook, the name of the other party is also displayed.) When no Caller ID is displayed, it indicates the reason why it is not displayed (anonymity reason).

Anonymity reason	Description
非通知設定 Hidden ID	The caller is intentionally hiding the Caller ID.
通知不可能 No ID	When you receive a call from a party who is unable to send the Caller ID (a call from abroad or from a general subscriber phone via various forwarding services, etc. However, some forwarding companies can display the Caller ID.)
公衆電話 Payphone	The call is from a payphone.

- When making a call, if you hear an announcement requesting your Caller ID be shown, your Caller ID is not notified. Change the setting to “通知する (Notifying)” and make a call again.
- Regardless of the Caller ID Notification Service setting, you can select whether your Caller ID is shown on the receiver’s display each time you make a call (see p.52).
- No charge is incurred for communication while checking the setting.

Using Caller ID Display Request Service

When a call is received without a Caller ID, an announcement requesting that the caller show Caller ID is played and the call ends automatically. This service allows you to prevent problems from unknown callers and thereby use your phone with confidence.

- You do not need to subscribe to Caller ID Display Request Service. No monthly fees are charged.
- When you are outside the service area, you cannot use Caller ID Display Request Service. Try again at a location where signal conditions are better.
- For details, see the “FOMA Network Services User’s Guide”.


About Caller ID Display Request Service

- This service is effective only when the anonymity reason is “hidden ID” (the caller sets the Caller ID not to be displayed). Calls whose anonymity reason is “payphone” and “no ID” are not covered by this service. However, if a call is made from a payphone with the prefix “184”, an announcement is played.
- If the caller uses Call Unit Display Service or the dialing charge meter, an announcement is not played.
- The time during an announcement is charged to the caller.
- When a hidden-ID call comes in with this service activated, no ringtone sounds. Also, these calls are not recorded in Call History.
- When Caller ID-based Call Block of the FOMA terminal is used simultaneously with this service, this service takes a preference.
- When Caller ID Display Request Service and any of the following services are activated at the same time, a call without Caller ID is handled as described below:


Service/function	Method to handle calls without Caller ID
Voice Mail Service	Plays an announcement requesting a Caller ID (messages are not saved).
Call Waiting Service	Plays an announcement requesting a Caller ID.
Call Forwarding Service	Plays an announcement requesting a Caller ID (calls are not forwarded).
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	Plays an announcement of call rejection from the caller saved as reject calls.
Drive Mode	Plays an announcement requesting a Caller ID (the announcement for Drive Mode is not played).

- 64K data communication connections are made without playing an announcement.
- Caller ID Display Request Service is not available with videophone calls. A videophone call is received even if the Caller ID is not displayed.



Activating Caller ID Display Request Service

- 1 In standby, select “サービス” “番号通知お願い” “1.サービス開始” from Menu.**
- 2 Select “1.する” and press  (選択).**
 Caller ID Display Request Service is activated.
 - To cancel the operation, select “2.しない”.

Deactivating Caller ID Display Request Service

- 1 In standby, select “サービス” “番号通知お願い” “2.サービス停止” from Menu.**
- 2 Select “1.する” and press  (選択).**
Caller ID Display Request Service is deactivated.
 - To cancel the operation, select “2.しない”.

Checking the setting

- 1 In standby, select “サービス” “番号通知お願い” “3.設定確認” from Menu.**
- 2 Select “1.する” and press  (選択).**
The setting is displayed.
 - To cancel the operation, select “2.しない”.
- 3 Check the contents and press  (OK).**

Note

- No call charge is incurred for activating or deactivating this service or checking the setting.

Using Dual Network Service

This service enables subscribed FOMA to use the mova using the phone number of the FOMA terminal. Communications are enabled in the mova service area even when you are outside the FOMA service area.

- Dual Network Service is an optional service that you need to subscribe to before use. Monthly fees are charged when you use this service.
- When you are outside the service area, you cannot switch between the mova and the FOMA terminal using Dual Network Service.
- For details, see the “Dual Network Service Guide”.


Making the mova usable

- 1 Dial “1540” on the mova.
- 2 Follow the instructions.


Making the FOMA terminal usable

- 1 In standby, select “サービス” “デュアルネットワーク” “1.デュアルネットワーク切替” from Menu.
- 2 Enter your network ID number and press  (選択).
 - The network ID number is a 4-digit ID number required for using network services (see p.161).
- 3 Select “1.する” and press  (選択).
 - To cancel the operation, select “2.しない”.

Checking the setting

- 1 In standby, select “サービス” “デュアルネットワーク” “2.状態確認” from Menu.
- 2 Select “1.する” and press  (選択).

The setting is displayed.

 - To cancel the operation, select “2.しない”.
- 3 Press  (OK).

Note

- When the mova is in data communication, if you attempt to switch it to the FOMA terminal, the communication is disconnected.
- When the FOMA terminal is in data communication, if you attempt to switch it to the mova, the communication is disconnected.
- The FOMA terminal allows you to use FOMA i-mode in the same procedure as before. You can also use i-mode services using mova except for certain services. Note that there are some restrictions and cautions for using each network facilities of the FOMA terminal and the mova. For details, see the “Dual Network Service Guide”.

Switching the Announcement Language between Japanese and English


You can switch between Japanese and English for an announcement played when your FOMA terminal cannot receive signals or the power is turned off.

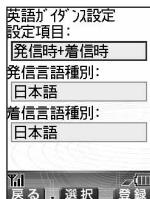
- No subscription or monthly charge is required for this service.
- You cannot switch to an English announcement outside the service area. Try again at a location where signal conditions are better.
- For details, see the “FOMA Network Services User’s Guide”.

English Announcement

- You can change the announcement language for you and for the other party.
- For an announcement for you, Japanese or English can be switched. For the other party, an English announcement can be played before or after a Japanese announcement. Between DoCoMo mobile phones, however, the announcement language set by the caller for dialing takes precedence over the announcement language set by the receiver for receiving.







1 In standby, select “サービス” “英語ガイダンス” “1.ガイダンス設定” from Menu.

2 Select “1.する” and press  (選択).



- To cancel the operation, select “2.しない”.


3 Set each item.

- ① Select the “設定項目” field and press  (選択).
- ② Select “発信時 + 着信時 (Dialing + reception)”, “発信時のみ (Only for dialing)”, or “着信時のみ (Only for reception)” and press  (選択).
 - “発信時” corresponds to an announcement for you and “着信時” corresponds to an announcement for the other party.
 - When you select “着信時のみ (Only for reception)”, proceed to Step ⑤.
- ③ Select the “発信言語種別” field and press  (選択).
- ④ Select a language and press  (選択).
 - When you select “発信時のみ (Only for dialing)” in Step ②, proceed to Step 4.
- ⑤ Select the “着信言語種別” field and press  (選択).
- ⑥ Select a language and press  (選択).
 - If you select “日本語 + 英語 (Japanese + English)”, an English announcement is played after a Japanese announcement.
 - If you select “英語 + 日本語 (English + Japanese)”, a Japanese announcement is played after an English announcement.


4 Press  (登録).

The announcement language is set.

Checking the settings

- 1 In standby, select “サービス” “英語ガイダンス” “2.設定確認” from Menu.**
- 2 Select “1.する” and press  (選択).**

The settings are displayed.

 - To cancel the operation, select “2.しない”.
- 3 Check the contents and press  (OK).**

Note

- No call charge is incurred for setting this service or checking the settings.

Service Dial

Using Service Dial

You can call the DoCoMo service desk for repairs and the DoCoMo general information desk.


Making a call to the DoCoMo service desk for repairs

- 1 In standby, select “サービス” “サービスダイヤル” “1.ドコモ故障問合せ” from Menu.**
- 2 Select “1.する” and press  (選択).**

A call to the DoCoMo service desk for repairs is made.

 - To cancel the operation, select “2.しない”.

Making a call to the DoCoMo general information desk

- 1 In standby, select “サービス” “サービスダイヤル” “2.ドコモ総合案内・受付” from Menu.**
- 2 Select “1.する” and press  (選択).**

A call to the DoCoMo general information desk is made.

 - To cancel the operation, select “2.しない”.

Note

- When the DoCoMo service desk for repairs and the DoCoMo general information desk are not saved in the FOMA Card, this function is not available.
- The screens displayed and the numbers dialed may vary depending on the FOMA Card. Also, they may not be displayed depending on the FOMA Card.

Selecting How a Call during Talking is Handled

If you subscribe to Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service, or Call Waiting Service, you can set a service to handle a call that is received during a call in advance.

- To enable this setting, activate the Call Reception during Talking setting (see p.225).

1 In standby, select “サービス” “着信動作選択” from Menu.

2 Select the service and press  (選択).

Second Call Handling is set.

Functions that can be set

Setting item	Operation to be taken when a call is received during a call
留守番電話 Voice Mail ¹	A call received during a call is automatically connected to the Voice Mail Service Center. ³
転送電話 Call Forwarding ²	A call received during a call is automatically forwarded to the preset phone number. ³
着信拒否 Call Rejection	Call reception is rejected so that calling is not performed.
通常着信 Normal receive	A call is received. When Voice Mail Service ¹ , Call Forwarding Service ² , or Call Waiting Service ⁴ is activated, it operates in accordance with the activated service.

1 Requires subscription to Voice Mail Service.

2 Requires subscription to Call Forwarding Service.

3 The received call is recorded in Call History as a missed call. (However, the call is not recorded in Call History if the ring time is set to 0 second.)


4 Requires subscription to Call Waiting Service.

Setting Call Reception during Talking


Activate or deactivate the action that has been set for Second Call Handling.

- You cannot set Call Reception during Talking outside the service area. Try again at a location where signal conditions are better.
- For details, see “FOMA Network Services User’s Guide”.



Activating the Call Reception during Talking setting

- 1 In standby, select “サービス” “通話中着信設定” “1.通話中着信設定開始” from Menu.**
- 2 Select “1.する” and press  (選択).**
The Call Reception during Talking setting is activated.
 - To cancel the operation, select “2.しない”.

Deactivating the Call Reception during Talking setting

- 1 In standby, select “サービス” “通話中着信設定” “2.通話中着信設定停止” from Menu.**
- 2 Select “1.する” and press  (選択).**
The Call Reception during Talking setting is deactivated.
 - To cancel the operation, select “2.しない”.

Checking the settings

- 1 In standby, select “サービス” “通話中着信設定” “3.設定確認” from Menu.**
- 2 Select “1.する” and press  (選択).**
The settings are displayed.
 - To cancel the operation, select “2.しない”.
- 3 Check the contents and press  (OK).**

Note


- No call charge is incurred for activating or deactivating this setting or checking the settings.
- When you subscribe to Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, the Call Reception during Talking setting is activated.

Setting Remote Operation


If you set Remote Operation, you can control services such as Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service from the touch tone general subscriber phone or payphone.

- When you subscribe to Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, the Remote Operation setting is deactivated.
- You cannot set Remote Operation outside the service area. Try again at a location where signal conditions are better.
- For details, see “FOMA Network Services User’s Guide”.



Activating the Remote Operation setting

- 1 In standby, select “サービス” “遠隔操作設定” “1.遠隔操作開始” from Menu.**
- 2 Select “1.する” and press  (選択).**
The Remote Operation setting is activated.
 - To cancel the operation, select “2.しない”.

Deactivating the Remote Operation setting

- 1 In standby, select “サービス” “遠隔操作設定” “2.遠隔操作停止” from Menu.**
- 2 Select “1.する” and press  (選択).**
The Remote Operation setting is deactivated.
 - To cancel the operation, select “2.しない”.

Checking the setting

- 1 In standby, select “サービス” “遠隔操作設定” “3.設定確認” from Menu.**
- 2 Select “1.する” and press  (選択).**
The setting is displayed.
 - To cancel the operation, select “2.しない”.
- 3 Check the contents and press  (OK).**

Registering and Using Services

When DoCoMo adds new network services, you can use them after registering in Menu.

- Maximum number of services that can be registered: 40

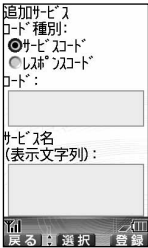
Registering or changing a service

1 In standby, select “サービス” “追加サービス” from Menu.



- If services are already saved, the Additional Service list appears.

2 Select “1.新規登録” from the submenu.



- To edit a service, select it from the Additional Service list and select “2.編集” from the submenu.

3 Set each item.

- ① Select for “サービスコード (Service code)” or “レスポンスコード (Response code)” and press (選択).
 and are switched.
 - The number (special number) for connecting to the Service Center and the code (USSD) for notifying to the Service Center can be saved as service code.
- ② Select the “コード” field and press (選択).
- ③ Enter a code with to , , or .
 - Up to 30 single-byte characters can be entered.
- ④ Select the “サービス名 (表示文字列)” field and press (選択).
- ⑤ Enter a service name.
 - Up to 40 single-byte or 20 double-byte characters can be entered.

4 Press (登録).

Additional service is registered.

- You cannot register the same service twice.
- When you edit the service, a prompt appears asking whether to overwrite. Select “はい” and press (選択). To cancel overwriting, select “いいえ”.

Note

- A service cannot be registered if nothing is entered in “コード” and “サービス名 (表示文字列)”.
- When the number of stored additional services is less than 40, you cannot store 30 or more service codes or response codes.

Using a registered service

- 1 In standby, select “サービス” “追加サービス” from Menu.



- 2 Select a service and press  (選択).


The saved code is sent to the Service Center.

Deleting a registered service

- 1 In standby, select “サービス” “追加サービス” from Menu.

- 2 Select a service and select “3. 一件削除” from the submenu.

- To delete all registered services, select “4. 全件削除”.

- 3 Select “はい” and press  (選択).

The service is deleted.




- To cancel the operation, select “いいえ”.

Character Entry

Basic Character Entry Procedures


The FOMA terminal provides various functions related to text entry such as saving data in Phonebook or composing mail. To facilitate these activities, convenient functions are available for entering characters, such as entering common phrases and copying and pasting text.

- Character entry procedure varies by the input method.

Input methods	Description
5-press Method (Default setting)	Multiple characters are assigned to each key. The character switches as a key is pressed. For example, to enter "E", press  5 times in the alphabetic mode.
2-press Method (see p.251)	Press two numeric keys to enter each character just like sending text to a pager*. For example, to enter "E", press  and  .

*In January 2001, DoCoMo's pager (Pocket Bell) was renamed "QUICKCAST".



Switching entry modes (5-press Method)

Each time  (文字) is pressed, the entry mode changes as follows:



- Entry modes available vary by the function to be used or the entry.



Type of characters and entry mode (5-press Method)

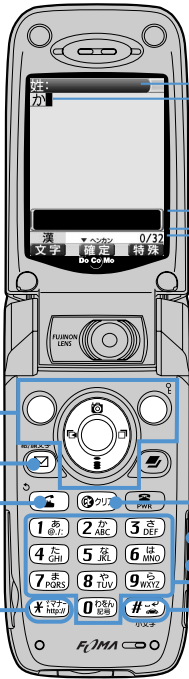
	Character type	Example	Entry mode	Page
Single-byte characters	Single-byte Katakana	ｱｲｴｶ	• Enter in the Kana mode	p.239
	Alphabetics	abcABC	• Enter in the alphabetic mode • Enter a reading of alphabetic characters such as "えー" in the Kanji mode and convert	p.232
	Numerics	12345	• Enter in the numeric or alphabetic mode	
	Symbols	@/.,.:?!&	• Enter in the alphabetic mode • Select in the special mode	p.232 p.239
	Emoticons	(^-^) m(_) m	• Press  twice in the character entry screen • Enter "かおもじ" in the Kanji mode and convert	p.241 p.237
Double-byte characters	Hiragana	あいうえお	• Enter in the Kanji mode	p.234
	Kanji	亜啞娃阿以	• Enter Hiragana in the Kanji mode and convert	
	Katakana	アイウエオ		
	Alphabetics	a b c A B C	• Enter single-byte alphabetic or numeric characters in the alphabetic mode and convert to double-byte characters • Switch to "全角入力" in the alphabetic mode and enter • Enter "えいじ" or "すうじ" in the Kanji mode and convert	p.232
	Numerics	1 2 3 4 5		
	Symbols	@/.,.:;	• Enter symbols in the alphabetic mode and convert to double-byte characters • Select in the special mode • Enter "きごう" in the Kanji mode and convert	p.239 p.237
	Pictographs	♥👉👈💔👉👈👉👈	• Press  in the character entry screen • Select in the special mode • Enter "えもじ" or "えもじに" in the Kanji mode and convert	p.241 p.237










Note1: You can use both single-byte and double-byte characters and spaces. Two single-byte characters are counted as one double-byte character. (However, characters are counted regardless of whether single-byte or double-byte characters are used when entering a text body of Short Message (SMS).)

Note2: The JIS Level 1 Kanji characters (2965 characters) and the Level 2 Kanji characters (3390 characters) are available.

Viewing the character entry screen and function of various keys

- When pressed momentarily it is indicated with , and when pressed and held down it is indicated with .



-  **(Easy Selector Plus)**
-  : Moves cursor up and down or left and right.
-  : Converts Hiragana to Kanji.
-  : Displays the Predictive Conversion list (see p.238).
-  : Selects an entry in the conversion list.
-  : Changes converted area while converting.
-  : Fixes entered characters.
-  (文字): Switches character entry mode to another (see p.230).
-  (特殊): Switches to the special mode.




Currently edited item

Cursor (blinking in the position where a character entry is available)




Part of the Predictive Conversion list

Entry mode; “▲スイソク” when Predictive Conversion is available, “▼ヘンカン” when characters can be converted; number of fixed characters (single-byte)/Max. number of characters that can be entered (single-byte)






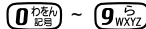
-  Deletes character at the position of the cursor.
-  Reverts to Hiragana during conversion.
-  Deletes character string (see p.234).





-  Copies characters (see p.246).
-  Scrolls up display on a screen-by-screen basis.
-  Scrolls up display successively on a screen-by-screen basis.






-  Pastes copied characters (see p.247).
-  Scrolls down display on a screen-by-screen basis.
-  Scrolls down display successively on a screen-by-screen basis.



-  Enters numbers and characters.
-  Executes a menu when the menu number is pressed while displaying the special mode menu.






-  Inserts a space.
-  Converts from uppercase to lowercase characters and vice versa.
-  Starts a new line (only available when entering text in the body of i-mode mail/Short Message (SMS), editing a signature/video telop or entering characters in i- ppli).





-  Displays pictographs and emoticons list (see p.241).
-  Switches the input methods (5-press Method/2-press Method) (see p.251).



-  Adds Dakuten (´) or Handakuten (¨) to characters (see p.236).
-  Switches from single-byte to double-byte characters and vice versa (see p.233).
-  Enters mail address and other data quickly (see p.242).



-  Displays characters in reversed order (see p.232).
-  Undoes fixed characters right after fixing (see p.237).

Note

- Characters and symbols displayed in the main display and the Inspiration window may look slightly different from the actual ones.

Entering Characters in 5-press Method

Entering alphanumeric characters

Single-byte or double-byte alphabetic and numeric characters and symbols such as “@” can be entered in the alphabetic mode. The numeric mode allows you to enter single-byte numeric characters.

Example Entering “Jun12” in the “姓” field of the Phonebook Entry screen

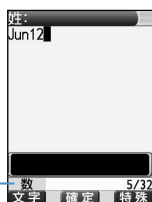
1 In the Phonebook Entry screen, select the “姓” field and press (選択).

The character entry screen for the “姓” field appears.









- The Kanji mode appears first.
- Selecting the entry field and pressing any character-assigned numeric key will open the character entry screen and entry is enabled immediately.






2 In the character entry screen, press (文字) repeatedly to switch to the alphabetic mode.

3 Use the numeric keys to enter “Jun12”.



“英” appears in the alphabetic mode.


- “J” Press  4 times (or press  once and press .
- “U” Press  twice.
- “n” Press  twice.
Press  (文字) to switch to the numeric mode.
- “1” Press  once.
- “2” Press  once.

- Character assignment table (see p.260)
- Pressing  immediately after entry converts the character from uppercase to lowercase and vice-versa.
- If you make a mistake, use  to delete the character, and reenter the correct one.
- When  or  is pressed, it is not necessary to move the cursor even if the different characters that are assigned to the same key are entered.
- When a different key is pressed while entering characters, the cursor moves automatically.
- Press  to display characters in reversed order.

4 Press (確定).

The characters are fixed.

To display characters in reversed order



Press  immediately after entering a character and the character is displayed in reversed order compared to the way it is entered using the numeric keys.

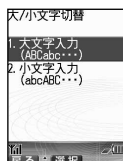
This function is available in the alphabetic mode, Kanji mode and Kana mode.






- A character cannot be displayed in reversed order after moving the cursor.

To change the sequence of uppercase and lowercase display

You can switch whichever of uppercase and lowercase alphabetic characters are displayed first when the numeric keys (**2**  to **9** ) are pressed. If you want to enter all alphabetic characters in uppercase, switch to the alphabetic (uppercase) mode.



- ① Press  (特殊) in the character entry screen.
- ② Select “09.大 / 小文字切替” and press  (選択).
- ③ Select “1.大文字入力” and press  (選択).



Various character entry methods

- Double-byte characters cannot be entered in the character entry screens, such as the entry screen for the recipient, in which you can only enter alphabetic and numeric characters.

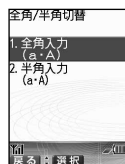
To enter double-byte characters in the alphabetic mode




- To convert to double-byte characters one by one



Press  immediately after entry to convert to double-byte characters. To go back to single-byte characters, press  again.

- To enter characters by switching to double-byte character entry mode



- ① Press  (特殊) in the character entry screen.
- ② Select “10.全角 / 半角切替” and press  (選択).
- ③ Select “1.全角入力” and press  (選択).

To enter double-byte characters in the Kanji mode

- Double-byte alphabets: Enter “えいじ” in the Kanji mode and convert.
- Double-byte numerics: In the Kanji mode, enter the reading of a number such as “いち”, or “すうじ” and convert.
- Double-byte symbols: In the Kanji mode, enter “きごう” and convert.

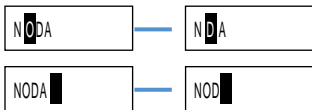
To enter single-byte alphabets in the Kanji mode

- In the Kanji mode, enter “えー” or “びー” and convert.

Correcting characters

If you enter a wrong character, delete the character and reenter the correct one. Characters are entered where the cursor is positioned.

Deleting a single character

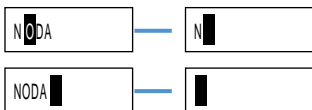


Move the cursor to the character you want to delete, and press .

The character at the cursor position is deleted.

- When the cursor is positioned at the end of a text string, the character on the left of the cursor is deleted.

Deleting a character string



Move the cursor to the first character of the string you want to delete, and press and hold down .

All the characters after the cursor are deleted.

- When there is no characters after the cursor, all characters in the character entry screen are deleted.

- To leave the entry field blank, delete all the characters in the character entry screen and press (確定).
- While correcting in the character entry screen, if you want to return characters to the ones before correction (fixed), delete all the characters and press .

Entering double-byte Kanji, Hiragana and Katakana characters

The Kanji mode allows you to enter double-byte characters such as Hiragana, Kanji, Katakana, symbols such as “ ? ”. To enter Kanji and Katakana, enter the reading in Hiragana first and convert. Alternatively, you can convert in a single operation Japanese expressions and sentences that consist of multiple phrases.

Example Entering “鈴木順子”

- 1 In the character entry screen, press (文字) repeatedly to switch to the Kanji mode.

2 Use the numeric keys to enter “すずきじゅんこ”.



- “す” Press **3** (DEF) 3 times.
 Press **→** to move the cursor to the right.
- “ず” Press **3** (DEF) 3 times and press ***** (177/IMP).
- “き” Press **2** (ABC) twice.
- “じ” Press **3** (DEF) twice and press ***** (177/IMP).
- “ゆ” Press **8** (TUV) 5 times (or press **8** (TUV) twice and press **#** (↵)).
- “ん” Press **0** (NUM) 3 times.
- “こ” Press **2** (ABC) 5 times (or press **2** (ABC) once and press **↵**).

- Character assignment table (see p.260)
- Up to 16 characters of the reading can be entered at one time.
- When “スイソク” appears, you can enter characters using Predictive Conversion (see p.238).
- If you make a mistake, use **⊗** (DEL) to delete the character, and reenter the correct one.
- To insert spaces between characters, convert and fix the entered characters and press **#** (↵).
- In the following cases, it is not necessary to move the cursor even if the characters assigned to the same key are entered successively:
 - When ***** (177/IMP) is pressed after a character to be followed by a Dakuten (゛) or Handakuten (゜) mark
 - When **#** (↵) is pressed to convert the character from uppercase to lowercase and vice versa
- When a different key is pressed while entering characters, the cursor moves automatically.
- When **↵** is pressed, characters are displayed in reversed order (see p.232).

3 Press **↵** .



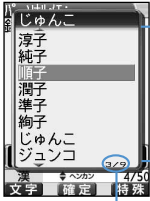
- “すずきじゅんこ” is converted to “鈴木淳子”.
- To select other characters, press **↻** .
 The conversion list appears.
 - The order in the list depends on the learning status of the dictionary.


4 Press **↻** (確定).



- “鈴木” is fixed.
- The characters selected for conversion are fixed also when subsequent characters are entered without pressing **↻** (確定).

5 Press  and select “順子”.




- The conversion list of “じゅんこ” appears.
- Up to 8 double-byte characters are displayed for each entry in the conversion list.
- Press  to exit the conversion list and return to the screen displayed prior to conversion.

The conversion list appears in accordance with the entered reading.

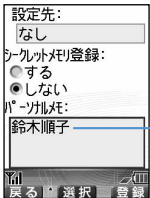
Entry No./total count of conversion entries

6 Press  (確定).



- “順子” is fixed.
- Press  to restore fixed characters (see p.237).


7 Press  (確定).



Characters are fixed.

“鈴木順子” is entered.

To add Dakuten (゛) or Handakuten (゜) marks to characters

Enter a character and press  to add a (゛) or (゜).

- For characters that can use both (゛) and (゜) (は character set)**

Each time the key is pressed, the mark is changed as follows: ˆ → ˆˆ → ˆˆˆ → no mark


Example “は” → Press  once and  twice.

- For characters that can only use (゛) (う, か, さ, た character sets)**

Each time the key is pressed, the mark is changed as follows: ˆ → no mark

Example “か” → Press  and .

- When a Dakuten mark is added to “う”, it is displayed as “う゛” (two double-byte characters).

A (゛) or (゜) can be entered as a double-byte character by pressing  11 and 12 times, respectively, when there is no character to be fixed.

To easily enter previously entered text strings (Predictive Conversion)

When you enter a text string such as a word or sentence in the Kanji mode, the text strings are saved in the FOMA terminal's memory. When you enter the same text strings the next time, they can be easily converted without entering the entire reading.

- The number of entries that can be saved in the FOMA terminal's memory depends on the number of characters in the entries. If there is not enough free space, the oldest item is overwritten.

To enter text strings using Predictive Conversion

Example Entering the previously entered text string “待ち合わせ” whose reading is “まちあわせ”

① Press **7** (ま).



- This operation can also be performed by entering “まち” or “まちあ”. If you enter the entire reading “まちあわせ”, Predictive Conversion cannot be performed. Press **0** to convert.

“スイソク” and a part of the conversion list appears when Predictive Conversion is available.

② Press **0**.



The conversion list (previously entered text strings) appears.

- Entries in the conversion list can contain up to 32 double-byte characters. When there are 9 or more double-byte characters, the first 7 are displayed, and the presence of the 8th and subsequent characters is indicated by an ellipsis (...).
- If you press **0** before pressing **0**, Predictive Conversion cannot be performed. To use Predictive Conversion, press **0** and **0**.

- When you press **0** after entering a text string without (^) or (°), strings with (^) or (°) are also displayed. However, if you press **0** after entering a text string that includes (^) or (°), strings without (^) or (°) are not displayed.

③ Select “待ち合わせ” and press **0** (確定).

“待ち合わせ” is fixed.

- Pressing **0** closes the conversion list and returns to the screen displayed prior to conversion.

To turn Predictive Conversion on/off

This operation can also be performed from Menu or during character entry. The default setting is on.

• Setting from Menu

- ① In standby, select “設定” “文字入力” “推測変換設定 (Set Predictive Conversion)” from Menu.
- ② Select “1.ON” and press **0** (選択).
 - Select “2.OFF” to turn off Predictive Conversion.

• Setting while the character entry screen appears

- ① Press **0** (特殊) in the character entry screen.
- ② Select “12.推測変換設定” and press **0** (選択).
- ③ Select “1.ON” and press **0** (選択).

• When Predictive Conversion is turned off

Characters are converted with normal Kanji conversion even if you press **0** after entering a reading in the Kanji mode.

To delete entries in the Predictive Conversion list

- ① In standby, select “設定” “文字入力” “推測変換辞書リセット (Reset Conversion list)” from Menu.
- ② Enter the terminal ID number and press **0** (選択).
- ③ Select “はい” and press **0** (選択).
 - To cancel the operation, select “いいえ”.

Entering single-byte Katakana characters

Single-byte Katakana characters or symbols such as “?” can be entered in the Kana mode.

1 In the character entry screen, press **○** (文字) to switch to the Kana mode.

2 Use the numeric keys to enter “入キ”.



“入” Press **3** (入 DEF) 3 times.

Press **○** to move the cursor one position to the right.

“キ” Press **3** (キ DEF) 3 times.

“.” Press **4** (キ DEF) .

“キ” Press **2** (カ ABC) twice.

“半カナ” appears.

- Character assignment table (see p.260)
- Press **#** immediately after entry to convert between uppercase and lowercase. For example, if you enter “ア” and immediately press **#**, “ア” is converted to “ァ”.
- If you make a mistake, use **⓪** to delete the character, and reenter the correct one.
- When **4** or **#** is pressed, it is not necessary to move the cursor even if the different characters assigned to the same key are entered.
- When a different numeric key is pressed while entering characters, the cursor moves automatically.
- Press **↔** to display characters in reversed order (see p.232).

3 Press **○** (確定).

Characters are fixed.

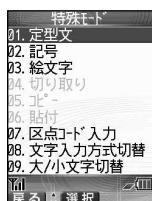
Note

- Single-byte Katakana characters should not be used when you send mail to other than i-mode compatible mobile phones, as such characters may not be correctly displayed at the receiving side.

Entering common phrases and symbols

Common phrases, symbols and pictographs can be entered using the special mode. Alternatively, you can use character map codes in the special mode to enter characters.

1 Press **○** (特殊) in the character entry screen.





Entering pictographs and emoticons

1 Press in the character entry screen.



List of pictographs appears.


Pictographs and emoticons appear in this order when you press .

- Pressing  (特殊) in the character entry screen and selecting “03.絵文字” also displays the list of pictographs.
- Alternatively, you can enter pictograph by entering “えもじ” or “えもじに” in the character entry screen and converting it.
- Alternatively, you can enter emoticons by entering “かおもじ” and converting it.
- List of pictographs (see p.262), list of emoticons (see p.263)

2 Enter a character.

① Select a character and press (選択).

Press  to select a pictograph and  to select a emoticon.

- Alternatively, you can press their numbers using the numeric keys to select emoticons.
- If entering emoticons causes you to exceed the maximum allowable number of characters, only the portion of the emoticon is entered so that the limit is not exceeded.
- If you select a wrong character, press  to delete it and repeat from Step 1.

② Press (確定).

The character is fixed.

Note

- Pictographs should not be used in a subject or mail body when you send mail to other than i-mode compatible mobile phones, as such characters may not be correctly displayed at the receiving side.
- If pictographs 2 are sent to i-mode incompatible mobile phones, they may not be correctly displayed at the receiving side.

Entering phone numbers and mail addresses

Data saved in Phonebook such as names, phone numbers, mail addresses and personal memos can be entered in the character entry screen.

- While PIM Lock is set, you cannot search Phonebook or “マイデータ”.
- This function cannot be used in the character entry screens where only certain entry modes can be selected (the entry fields for reading, phone number, and mail address).

Example Entering “電話番号1” of your FOMA terminal

1 Press (特殊) in the character entry screen, select “11.電話帳情報コピー”, and press .

A selection screen appears asking which data you want to copy.

2 Select “1.マイデータ” and press (選択).



- Items that are not saved cannot be selected.

When “2.電話帳” is selected

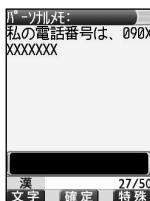
- ① Search Phonebook, select a party and press (選択).

When “3.シークレットメモリ” is selected

- ① Enter your terminal ID number and press (選択).
- ② Search Phonebook, select a party and press (選択).

Data saved for a selected item

3 Select “電話番号1” and press (選択).



Characters are entered at the cursor position.

Quick entry of mail addresses and other data

Strings such as “http://www.” or “.co.jp” can easily be entered.

- This function can be used in the following entry screens:
 - Mail address and URL entry
 - Host name entry in the i-mode connection host setting screen

1 Press in the character entry screen.



- Each time is pressed, the string changes. When is pressed, the string changes in reversed order.

Number of pressing	Entered string	Number of pressing	Entered string
1	http://	6	.ac.jp
2	http://www.	7	.net
3	.ne.jp	8	.com
4	.co.jp	9	.org
5	.or.jp	10	@docomo.ne.jp

- This function is also available when entering characters in 2-press Method.

2 Press (確定).

Characters are fixed.

Functions available in the special mode

In the special mode, the following functions are available in addition to the use of common phrases, symbols and pictographs.

Submenu	Handling method	Page
切り取り Cut	Cut text in the character entry screen and save it in the FOMA terminal's memory.	p.246
コピー Copy	Copy text in the character entry screen and saved it in the FOMA terminal's memory.	p.246
貼付 Paste	Paste text saved in the FOMA terminal's memory to a different location using the cut or copy function.	p.247
区点コード入力 Use Character Map Code	Enter characters using 4-digit character map codes.	p.248
文字入力方式切替 Select Input Method	Switch the input methods.	p.251
大 / 小文字切替 Change uppercase/lowercase	Change the sequence of uppercase and lowercase display in the alphabetic mode.	p.233
全角 / 半角切替 Change double-/single-byte	Switch between double-byte and single-byte character entry in the alphabetic mode.	p.233
電話帳情報コピー Copy Phonebook	Copy data saved in Phonebook and paste it to the character entry screen.	p.241
推測変換設定 Set Predictive Conversion	Turn Predictive Conversion on/off.	p.238
バーコードリーダー Barcode Reader	When entering characters in an entry field in a site or screen memo, scan QR and JAN codes using Barcode Reader and enter scan results.	"Application" p.219

Editing/Saving Common Phrases

You can edit and delete the default common phrases and register frequently used sentences or phrases as new common phrases. You can reset the common phrases to their defaults even after editing them.

Editing the default common phrases and saving them

The default common phrases can be overwritten with other frequently used sentences or phrases.

1 In standby, select “設定” “文字入力” “定型文登録” from Menu.

The list of Common Phrase groups appears.

2 Select a Common Phrase group and press (選択).

The Common Phrase list appears.

To switch the display of the Common Phrase list to full-size display (entire phrase shown)

① Select “3.全画面表示” from the submenu.

- To return to the 1-line layout, select “3.一行表示” from the submenu.

3 Select a common phrase and press (編集).

The common phrase appears in the character entry screen.

4 Edit the common phrase and press (確定).

- Up to 128 single-byte or 64 double-byte characters can be entered.

Note

- Single-byte Katakana, pictographs or some double-byte symbols such as “①” and “(株)” should not be used in common phrases when you send mail to other than i-mode compatible mobil phones, as such characters may not be correctly displayed at the receiving side.
- Single-byte symbols, pictographs or some double-byte symbols such as “①” and “(株)” should not be used in common phrases when you send Short Message (SMS), as such characters may not be correctly displayed at the receiving side.

Changing a Common Phrase group name

1 In standby, select “設定” “文字入力” “定型文登録” from Menu.

2 Select a Common Phrase group, and select “1.編集” from the submenu.


The group name appears in the character entry screen.

3 Enter a new group name and press (確定).

The group name is changed.

- Up to 14 single-byte or 7 double-byte characters can be entered.

Deleting common phrases one by one

- 1 Display the Common Phrase list.**
 - Follow Steps 1 - 2 in *Editing the default common phrases and saving them* (see p.244).
- 2 Select a common phrase, and select “2.一件削除” from the submenu.**
 - Alternatively, you can press and hold down  to delete a common phrase.
- 3 Select “はい” and press  (選択).**


The common phrase is deleted.

 - To cancel the operation, select “いいえ”.

Resetting common phrases to the defaults

Common phrases can be reset to the defaults. You can reset either common phrase one by one or all phrases in a group.


Resetting common phrase one by one

- 1 Display the Common Phrase list.**
- 2 Select a common phrase, and select “1.定型文リセット” from the submenu.**
- 3 Select “はい” and press  (選択).**

The common phrase is reset to the default.

 - To cancel the operation, select “いいえ”.

Resetting all common phrases in a group

- 1 Display the Common Phrase group list.**
- 2 Select a Common Phrases group, and select “2.グループ内リセット” from the submenu.**
- 3 Select “はい” and press  (選択).**

Common phrases in the group are reset to the defaults. The changed group name is also reset to the default name.

 - To cancel the operation, select “いいえ”.


Copying, Cutting and Pasting Text



Text in the character entry screen can be copied or cut and pasted to a different location within the screen. Copying and pasting can also be used between the character entry screens for different functions.

- Maximum number of characters that can be cut, copied and pasted at one time: 2,000 characters (irrespective of whether they are single-byte or double-byte characters)
- When text is cut or copied while other text is saved in the memory, the newly cut or copied text will replace the old text.

Copying or cutting text


Example Copying

- 1 Press  (特殊) in the character entry screen.**




 - Alternatively, you can press  to copy text. Proceed to Step 3.
- 2 Select “05.コピー” and press  (選択).**

Text can be copied.

 - To cut the text, select “04.切り取り”.
- 3 Select the start and end points for copying text.**

 - ① Move the cursor to the first character of the text you want to copy and press  (選択).**

The start point is selected.

 - To cancel the selection of the start point, press  (戻る). Alternatively, you can press  to cancel.
 - ② Move the cursor to the last character of the text you want to copy and press  (選択).**

Text is copied.

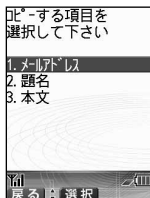
Copying mail text

You can copy the recipient's mail addresses, the subject and the mail body from received mail or sent/unsent mail.

- Images and melodies cannot be copied.

Example Copying text from received mail

1 Display received mail and select “12.コピー” from the submenu.



- Displaying received mail (see “Application” p.137, 175)
- To copy text from sent/unsent mail, first display sent/unsent mail and select “04.コピー” from the submenu.

2 Select the item you want to copy and press (選択).

Text can be copied.

3 Select the start and end points of the text you want to copy.

Text is copied.

Note


- When a mail item has multiple recipient mail addresses, the addresses are displayed with a linefeed entered after each one. In such a case, though multiple addresses are copied, only the first one can be pasted in the “宛先” field of i-mode mail.

Pasting text

Cut or copied text is saved in the FOMA terminal's memory and can be used for pasting repeatedly until the power is turned off.

- If you attempt to paste any copied text that contains a linefeed into the character entry screen where a linefeed cannot be entered, the text following the linefeed is not pasted. (Linefeeds can only be used when entering text in the body of i-mode mail/Short Message (SMS), editing a signature/video telop, or entering characters of i- ppli.)

1 Press (特殊) in the character entry screen.

- Alternatively, you can press  to paste text (excluding the Compose i-mode Mail screen). Proceed to Step 3.

2 Select “06.貼付” and press (選択).

Text can be pasted.

3 Move the cursor to the position where you want to insert the text and press (選択).

The text is inserted to the position immediately before the cursor.

- If the text contains any characters that cannot be pasted (for example, if you attempt to paste Kanji characters into the character entry screen that only allows you to enter alphanumeric characters), pasting is not performed.
- If pasting the text causes you to exceed the maximum allowable number of characters, only the portion of the text is pasted so that the limit is not exceeded. (In the Compose i-mode Mail screen, text can be pasted even if the maximum allowable number of characters is exceeded. Delete the characters exceeding the limit afterwards.)

Entering Characters Using Character Map Codes

Characters can be entered using 4-digit character map codes (JIS Kanji codes). This can be useful at certain times, such as when the character you want to insert does not appear even when you enter the reading.

Example Entering “糸” (え) (character map code: 0481)

1 Press **⊙** (特殊) in the character entry screen.

2 Select “07.句点コード入力” and press **⊙** (選択).

3 Use **0** (わをん 記号) to **9** (wxyz) to enter **0481** (4-digit character map code).



- Pressing **⊙** while entering a 4-digit character map code displays a character assigned to the code nearest to the entered code.

Example: **4** (た GH) **8** (や TUV) **0** (わをん 記号), and **⊙**

Displays “わ” of 0479 or “糸” of 0481

- Pressing **⊙** without entering any character map code displays a character assigned to the last or first character map code.
- Pressing and holding down **⊙** displays character map codes and characters in turn. A character map code with no character assigned is skipped.
- When a character map code with no character assigned is entered, “存在しません (Not found)” appears.
- If you enter a wrong code, press **⊗** (削除) to delete the code and reenter the correct code.

4 Press **⊙** (確定).
“糸” is entered.

Note

- Kanji characters registered as JIS Level 1 (2965 characters) and Level 2 (3390 characters) are available.
- If you use character map codes to enter characters in the “姓” and “名” field of a phonebook entry, the reading is not automatically entered in the “読み” field.

Saving Frequently Used Words

Words or phrases that are not easily converted into correct Kanji characters, or frequently used long words or phrases like company names can be registered with their unique readings, making it easy to recall them when needed.

- Maximum number of words and phrases that can be saved: 100 (up to 32 single-byte or 16 double-byte characters each)

Saving a new word

1 In standby, select “設定” “文字入力” “単語登録” from Menu.



- If words are already saved, the word list screen appears.


2 Select “1.新規登録” from the submenu.




3 Save a new word.

- A space cannot be contained in the “読み” field. It can be included in the “語句” field.

To enter a word or phrase


① Select the “語句” field and press  (選択).

② Enter a word or phrase and press  (確定).

- Up to 32 single-byte or 16 double-byte characters can be entered.

To enter the reading

① Select the “読み” field and press  (選択).

② Enter the reading and press  (確定).

- Up to 16 double-byte Hiragana characters can be entered.
- A Dakuten (゛) or Handakuten (゜) for reading is regarded as one double-byte character.
- The following characters cannot be used at the beginning of the reading:
 - A prolonged sound sign (ー), a Dakuten (゛) or a Handakuten (゜)
 - Small Kana characters such as “あ”, “い”, “う”, “え”, “お”, “つ”, “や”, “ゆ”, “よ” and “わ”
 - “を” and “ん”

4 Press (登録).

The word is saved.

- You cannot save the same word twice.

Note

- Nothing can be saved if no phrase or reading has been entered.
- If 100 words have already been saved, no more new words can be saved. Delete words you no longer need (see p.250).
- To use a saved word, enter the reading and convert it.

Editing a saved word

1 In standby, select “設定” “文字入力” “単語登録” from Menu.



• The words are listed in the order of the Kana syllabary based on the reading.

Word No./total count of saved words

2 Select a word and press (選択).

3 Edit the word.

Change the word or reading.

- Follow Step 3 in *Saving a new word* (see p.249).

4 Press (登録).

5 Select “はい” and press (選択).

The word is saved.

- You cannot save the same word twice.
- To cancel the operation, select “いいえ”.

Deleting a saved word

1 In standby, select “設定” “文字入力” “単語登録” from Menu.

- The words are listed in the order of the Kana syllabary based on the reading.

2 Select a word and select “2.一件削除” from the submenu.

- Alternatively, you can press and hold down to delete a saved word.
- To delete all saved words at one time, select “3.全件削除”.

3 Select “はい” and press (選択).

The selected word is deleted.

- To cancel the operation, select “いいえ”.

Entering Characters in 2-press Method

Characters can be entered by pressing two numeric keys for each character.


[Select Input Method]

[Default] モード1 (かな方式) Mode 1 (5-press Method)


Setting 2-press Method

To use 2-press Method to enter characters, you must set the input method.




1 In standby, select “設定” “文字入力” “文字入力方式切替” from the menu.

2 Select “2.モード2 (2タッチ方式)” and press  (選択).


2-press Method is set.

- To return to 5-press Method, select “1.モード1 (かな方式)”.
- To switch between the input methods during entering characters, press and hold down .

To switch between the input methods using the special mode

- ① Press  (特殊) in the character entry screen.
- ② Select “08.文字入力方式切替” and press  (選択).
- ③ Select “2.モード2 (2タッチ方式)” and press  (選択).


Switching entry modes

Each time  (文字) is pressed, the entry mode changes as follows:

Kanji mode (double-byte) — Kana mode (single-byte)

In the Kanji mode, double-byte Kanji, Hiragana, Katakana, alphanumeric characters can be entered.

In the Kana mode, single-byte Katakana, alphanumeric characters can be entered. The character assignment is the same as in the Kanji mode.

- To switch to the special mode, press  (特殊).
- Available entry modes vary by the function or entry.



Entering characters

The description below shows how to enter Katakana characters in the Kana mode.

- Follow the same steps to enter characters in the Kanji mode.
- To convert to Kanji and to enter characters in the special mode, follow the same steps as those for mode 1 (5-press Method) (see p.234).
- Character assignment table (see p.261)

Example Entering “双 幺”

1 In the character entry screen, press  (文字) to switch to the Kana mode.

- To switch between uppercase and lowercase, press  .
- The entry modes are indicated as follows:

	Uppercase mode	Lowercase mode
Kanji mode	漢大	漢小
Kana mode	半カナ大	半カナ小

2 Use the numeric keys to enter “入” “キ”.



- “入” Press **3 DEF** **3 DEF**.
- “入” Press **3 DEF** **3 DEF**.
- “キ” Press **0 DEF** **4 DEF**.
- “キ” Press **2 ABC** **2 ABC**.

• If you make a mistake, use **ⓧ (クリア)** to delete the character and reenter the correct character.

“半カナ大” appears.

3 Press **⓪ (確定)**.

The characters are fixed.

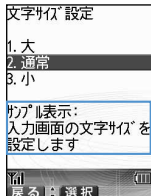
Set Character Size

[Default] 通常 Normal

Changing Font Size on the Character Entry Screen

You can change the font size when entering characters in the character entry screen.

1 In standby, select “設定” “画面・表示” “文字サイズ設定” from Menu.



Each time **⓪** is pressed, sample display is changed.

2 Select “1.大 (Big)” or “3.小 (Small)” and press **⓪ (選択)**.

The character size is changed.

- To return to the normal size, select “2.通常 (Normal)”.

When character size is changed

- Characters can be entered by the selected font size when entering characters in the character entry screen.
- The available character font sizes are:
Big: 30 dots Normal: 24 dots Small: 16 dots
- Even if the font size is changed, the following characters are not changed in the character entry screen:
 - Characters used to display the item during editing
 - Characters in the Kanji conversion/Predictive Conversion list
 - Characters in various messages
- Turning the FOMA terminal off does not cancel this setting.

Appendix

Menu List

: Page in the "Application" manual

	Menu	Page	
カメラ Camera	静止画像撮影 (Still Image Photography)	p.204	
	動画撮影 (Video Photography)	p.207	
	カメラ画像 (Camera Image)	p.224 p.246	
	カメラ設定 (Set Camera)	p.214	
マルチメディア Multimedia	イメージ (Image)	p.224	
	i モーション (i-motion)	p.246	
	キャラ電 (Chara-den)	p.88	
	メロディ (Melody)	p.260	
アクセサリ Accessory	スケジュール (Schedule)	p.177	
	アラーム (Alarm)	p.174	
	音声メモプレーヤー (Voice Memo Player)	p.70	
	音声メモレコーダー (Voice Memo Recorder)	p.183	
	赤外線受信 (Receive Infrared Data)	p.274 p.277 p.278	
	メモリースティック (Memory Stick)	p.289	
	バーコードリーダー (Barcode Reader)	p.217	
	設定 Setting	音・バイブレーター Sound/Vibrator	
		音の設定 (Set Sound)	p.138
		音量調節 (Adjust Volume)	p.136
保留音設定 (Set Hold Tone)		p.132	
バイブレーター (Vibrator)		p.121	
オリジナルマナーモード (Manner Mode Selection)		p.119	
ボタン確認音 (Keypad Sound)		p.143	
充電確認音 (Charging Sound)		p.143	
画面・表示 Screen/Display		待受画面設定 (Set Standby Screen)	p.144
		パートナー設定 (Set Partner)	p.153
	パートナーアシスト設定 (Set Assist Partner)	p.160	
	フォトコール設定 (Set Photo Call)	p.148	
	インスピレーションウィンドウ (Set Inspiration Window)	p.149	
	ウェイクアップ表示 (Wake-up Display)	p.152	
	表示サイズ設定 (Set Display Size)	p.159	
	文字サイズ設定 (Set Character Size)	p.252	
	照明設定 (Set Display Light)	p.157	
	コントラスト調節 (Adjust Contrast)	p.156	
TV電話 Videophone	発信時自画像送信 (Send Self Image)	p.86	
	代替画像設定 (Set Alternate Image)	p.87	
	音声自動再発信設定 (Set Auto Redial by Voice)	p.89	
	応答保留画面選択 (Select Answer Hold Screen)	p.89	
	通話保留画面選択 (Select Call Hold Screen)	p.90	
	伝言メモ画面選択 (Select Record Message Screen)	p.90	
	画像表示設定 (Set Image Display)	p.90	
	T V 電話画面切替 (Change Image Size)	p.91	
	画像品質設定 (Set Image Quality)	p.91	

	Menu	Page	
設定 Setting	時計・時刻 Clock/Time		
	日付時刻設定 (Set Clock)	p.45	
	自動電源ON (Auto Power On)	p.173	
	自動電源OFF (Auto Power Off)	p.174	
	プライバシー Privacy	グループ別設定 (Set Group)	p.101
		暗証番号の変更 (Change Terminal ID)	p.162
		禁止動作設定 (Set Restrictions)	p.169
		電話帳指定着信拒否 (Reject Calls)	p.126
		電話帳指定着信許可 (Accept Calls)	p.125
		非通知着信設定 (Caller ID-based Call Block)	p.128
無着着信時間設定 (Set Mute Ring Time)		p.124	
登録外電話番号拒否 (Reject Unstored Number)		p.127	
履歴表示設定 (Set Log Display)		p.170	
メールセキュリティ (Mail Security)		p.186	
メモリースティックロック (Memory Stick Lock)	PIN1の変更 (Change PIN1 Code)	p.163	
	PIN2の変更 (Change PIN2 Code)	p.163	
	PIN1入力ON/OFF設定 (Set PIN1 Entry ON/OFF)	p.162	
	USBモード設定 (Set USB Mode)	p.301	
	ソフトウェア更新 (Software Update)	p.272	
	文字入力 Character Entry	単語登録 (Save New Word)	p.249
		定型文登録 (Save Common Phrase)	p.244
		文字入力方式切替 (Select Input Method)	p.251
		推測変換設定 (Set Predictive Conversion)	p.238
		推測変換辞書リセット (Reset Conversion List)	p.238
通話時間・状況確認 Cost/Check	通話時間表示 (View Call Time)	p.135	
	通話積算時間リセット (Reset Total Call Time)	p.135	
	電池残量 (Battery Level)	p.43	
	設定状況確認 (Confirm Settings)	p.185	
	登録状況確認 (Check Storage Status)	p.111	
伝言メモ Record Message	伝言メモ (Record Message)	p.66	
	通話・通信 Call/Communication	オート着信機能設定 (Set Auto Answer)	p.191
クローズ動作設定 (Set Close Operation)		p.133	
再接続アラーム (Call Recovery Alarm)		p.130	
通話品質アラーム (Quality Alarm)		p.131	
ノイズキャンセラ (Noise Reduction)		p.130	
イヤホン/スピーカ切替 (Select Earphone/Speaker)		p.188	
エニーキーアンサー設定 (Set Any Key Answer)		p.131	
セルフモード (Self Mode)		p.171	
サブアドレス設定 (Set Subaddress)		p.129	
プレフィックス設定 (Set Prefix)		p.129	

	Menu	Page		Menu	Page	
設定 Setting	i モード設定 i-mode Settings		サービス Network Services	留守番電話 (Voice Mail Service)	p.204	
	接続待ち時間設定 (Set Timeout)	p.49		キャッチホン (Call Waiting Service)	p.213	
	接続先設定 (Set Connection Host)	p.50		転送でんわ (Call Forwarding Service)	p.209	
	センター接続設定 (Set Center Connection)	p.56		迷惑電話ストップ (Nuisance Call Block Service)	p.216	
	自動表示設定 (Set Auto Display)	p.103		発信者番号通知 (Caller ID Notification)	p.217	
	画像表示設定 (Set Image Display)	p.48		番号通知お願いい (Caller ID Display Request Service)	p.219	
	スクロール設定 (Set Scroll)	p.48		通話中着信設定 (Set Call Reception during Talking)	p.225	
	i モーション設定 (Set i-motion)	p.100		着信動作選択 (Second Call Handling)	p.224	
	i モード問合せ設定 (Select Check Message)	p.192		遠隔操作設定 (Set Remote Operation)	p.226	
	CA証明書設定 (Set CA Certificate)	p.53		デュアルネットワーク (Dual Network Service)	p.221	
	ドコモCA証明書設定 (Set DoCoMo CA Certificate)	p.54		英語ガイドンス (English Announcement Service)	p.222	
	ユーザ証明書設定 (Set User Certificate)	p.54		サービスタイタル (Service Dial)	p.223	
	i モード設定確認 (Check i-mode Settings)	p.51		追加サービス (Additional Service)	p.227	
	メール設定 Mail Settings			PLMN設定 (Set PLMN)	p.188	
	メール振り分設定 (Set Mail Sorting)	p.187		メール Mail	i モード問合せ (Check New Message)	p.140
	署名設定 (Set Signature)	p.191			SMS問合せ (Check New SMS)	p.168
	署名編集 (Edit Signature)	p.191			受信メールBOX (Inmail Box)	p.175
	i モード問合せ設定 (Select Check Message)	p.192			送信メールBOX (Outmail Box)	p.175
	メール選択受信設定 (Set Receive Option)	p.192			新規メール作成 (Compose i-mode Mail)	p.118
	メールグループ設定 (Set Mail Group)	p.193			SMS作成 (Compose SMS)	p.164
	添付ファイル受信設定 (Set Attached File Reception)	p.195			メール設定 (Mail Settings)	—
	添付ファイル自動再生 (Set Attached File Auto Playback)	p.195			SMS設定 (SMS Settings)	—
	メール設定確認 (Check Mail Settings)	p.196			メール選択受信 (Mail Optional Reception)	p.138
	SMS設定 SMS Settings				i モード i-mode	i Menu (iMenu)
	メッセージ送達通知設定 (Set Message Delivery Notification)	p.170		i モード問合せ (Check New Message)		p.140
	メッセージ有効期間設定 (Set Message Retention Period)	p.170		Bookmark (Bookmark)		p.36
	SMSセンター設定 (Set SMS Host)	p.171		Internet (Internet)		p.33
SMS設定確認 (Check SMS Settings)	p.171	ラストページ (Last Page)	p.26			
i アプリ設定 i- ppli Settings		画面メモ (Screen Memo)	p.39			
ソフト情報設定 (Set Software Information)	p.62	メッセージR (Message R)	p.104			
待受時計表示 (Set Standby Clock Display)	p.77	メッセージF (Message F)	p.104			
シークレットデータ参照設定 (Access Secret Data)	p.68	ユーザ証明書操作 (User Certificate Operation)	p.54			
i アプリ設定確認 (Check i- ppli Settings)	p.80	i モード設定 (i-mode Settings)	—			
設定リセット Reset Settings		i アプリ i- ppli	ソフト一覧 (Software List)	p.63		
基本機能リセット (Reset Phone Settings)	p.185		i アプリ待受画面設定 (Set i- ppli Standby Screen)	p.75		
i モードリセット (Reset i-mode Settings)	p.52		i アプリ待受画面解除 (Release i- ppli Standby Screen)	p.77		
メールリセット (Reset Mail Settings)	p.196		i アプリ履歴 (i- ppli Log)	p.64		
SMSリセット (Reset SMS Settings)	p.172			p.66		
i アプリリセット (Reset i- ppli Settings)	p.80			p.76		
			i アプリ設定 (i- ppli Settings)	—		
ヘルプ Help	p.192					
でんわ Phone	電話帳検索 (Phonebook Search)	p.106				
	電話帳登録 (Phonebook Entry)	p.94				
		p.99				
	リダイヤル (Redial)	p.50				
	着信履歴 (Call History)	p.58				
	シークレット検索 (Secret Search)	p.114				
	グループ別設定 (Set Group)	p.101				
	フォトコール設定 (Set Photo Call)	p.148				
	自局番号 (Own Number)	p.44				

Character Map Code List

The screen display may differ from characters and symbols shown in this list. Figures in the left column indicate the 1st digit to 3rd digit figures of JIS Kanji code. A figure in the top column indicates the 4th digit number of JIS Kanji code.

Example To enter “爨” (爨), enter “048” as the 1st digit to 3rd digit figures of JIS Kanji code, and enter “1” as the 4th digit figure of JIS Kanji code.

1st to 3rd digit Figures of JIS Kanji code	4th digit figure of JIS Kanji code										1st to 3rd digit Figures of JIS Kanji code	4th digit figure of JIS Kanji code										1st to 3rd digit Figures of JIS Kanji code	4th digit figure of JIS Kanji code																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																										
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																										
010	!	~	^	^	^	^	^	^	^	075										191	蟹	階	内	凱	劾	劾	劾	劾	劾	076										192	蟹	階	内	凱	劾	劾	劾	劾	劾	077										193	蟹	階	内	凱	劾	劾	劾	劾	劾	078										194	蟹	階	内	凱	劾	劾	劾	劾	劾	080										195	蟹	階	内	凱	劾	劾	劾	劾	劾	081										196	蟹	階	内	凱	劾	劾	劾	劾	劾	082										197	蟹	階	内	凱	劾	劾	劾	劾	劾	083										198	蟹	階	内	凱	劾	劾	劾	劾	劾	199	蟹	階	内	凱	劾	劾	劾	劾	劾	200										201	蟹	階	内	凱	劾	劾	劾	劾	劾	202										203	蟹	階	内	凱	劾	劾	劾	劾	劾	204										205	蟹	階	内	凱	劾	劾	劾	劾	劾	207										207										208										209										210										211										212										213										214										215										216										217										218										219										220										221										222										223										224										225										226										173										174										175										176										177										178										179										180										181										182										182										183										184										185										187										188										189										190										232										233										234										235										236										237										238										239										240										241										242										243										243										244									

Character Assignment Table (2-press Method)

Characters and numeric keys correspond differently for the uppercase mode and lowercase mode. To switch between uppercase mode and lowercase mode, press

8 (や YU) and **0** (わ WA).

- The uppercase mode is automatically set when the input method is changed.

Uppercase mode

Normal-sized Kana characters, uppercase alphanumeric characters can be entered.

Example: Press **4** (ち CHI) and **3** (き KI) to enter “つ”

		2nd numeric key														
		1 (あ)	2 (か)	3 (さ)	4 (た)	5 (な)	6 (は)	7 (ま)	8 (や)	9 (ら)	0 (わ)					
1st numeric key	1 (あ)	あ	い	う	え	お	A	B	C	D	E					
	2 (か)	か	き	く	け	こ	F	G	H	I	J					
	3 (さ)	さ	し	す	せ	そ	K	L	M	N	O					
	4 (た)	た	ち	つ	て	と	P	Q	R	S	T					
	5 (な)	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	U	V	W	X	Y					
	6 (は)	は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ	Z	?	!	-	/					
	7 (ま)	ま	み	む	め	も	¥	&								
	8 (や)	や	(ゆ)	よ	*	#	1	2	3	4	5					
	9 (ら)	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4	5					
	0 (わ)	わ	を	ん	*	°	6	7	8	9	0					

Lowercase mode

Small Kana characters such as “あ”, “い”, “う”, “え”, “お”, “つ”, “や”, “ゆ”, “よ” and “わ”, lowercase alphabetic characters or punctuation marks can be entered.

Example: Press **4** (ち CHI) and **3** (き KI) to enter “つ”

		2nd numeric key														
		1 (あ)	2 (か)	3 (さ)	4 (た)	5 (な)	6 (は)	7 (ま)	8 (や)	9 (ら)	0 (わ)					
1st numeric key	1 (あ)	あ	い	う	え	お	a	b	c	d	e					
	2 (か)	/	/	/	/	/	f	g	h	i	j					
	3 (さ)	/	/	/	/	/	k	l	m	n	o					
	4 (た)	/	/	つ	/	/	p	q	r	s	t					
	5 (な)	/	/	/	/	/	u	v	w	x	y					
	6 (は)	/	/	/	/	/	z	/	/	/	/					
	7 (ま)	/	/	/	/	/	/	/	/	/	/					
	8 (や)	や	ゆ	よ	/	/	/	/	/	/	2					
	9 (ら)	/	/	/	/	/	/	/	/	/	/					
	0 (わ)	わ	/	/	/	/	/	/	/	/	/					

1 A space is entered (unless there are characters to be fixed). If pressed at the position where no character is entered, the cursor moves to the right.

2 The mode switches from uppercase to lowercase mode, and vice versa.

- Entering a character followed by pressing **#** (＃) converts the character from uppercase to lowercase and vice versa.
- To add a Dakuten (゛) or Handakuten (゜), enter a character that can be used with Dakuten or Handakuten, and press ***** (＊).
- When only numeric characters can be entered such as when entering a phone number, just press **0** (0) to **9** (9) to enter them. Press ***** (＊) to enter “*” and **#** (＃) to enter “#”. Pressing **☎** inserts a pause “P”. (This is only available when entering in the “電話番号” field of Phonebook.)
- Small Kana character “わ” (**0** (わ WA) and **1** (あ HA) in the lowercase mode) can only be entered in the Kanji mode.
- When **#** (＃) is pressed and held down, a new line starts. (This is only available when entering text in the body of i-mode mail/Short Message (SMS), editing a signature/video telop, or entering characters of i- ppli.)
- In the Kana mode, characters are entered as Katakana (single-byte) characters.

Emoticons Entry procedure (see p.241)

(^-^)	m()m	(^^;)	(^^)v	(;_;)
o(^o^o	\(^0^)/	(^o^)/	d=(^o^)=b	(*_^*_
(^^彡	(^o^;)	σ(^_^;)	(ToT)	(^^)~~~~
(ToT)/~~	(>_<)	(*_*)	(+_+)	(@_@)
(?_?)	(=_=)	(^-)	(^∧^)	(-_-;)
w(^o^w	(^3^)/~☆	(☆o☆)	(-_)zzz	☆彡
(^▽^)	v(^o^)	(^◇^)	(^-)j	o(^-^o
(^-°)b	(^-)-☆	(o.°.o)/	(.°.彡-☆	~(m~)m
\(^o~)/	(#_3_)	(^ (工) ^)	(^-)_E~	\ (^ ▽ ^) /
\(*^▽^*)/	~(▽ ~)	^~^)人(^~^	ε=_(.°.°)↓	(^▽^σ)~0"
(^▽@)♪♪♪	彡(^◇^)/))	ε=彡(*^▽^)/	(^-;)	(. _)
(. _.	(^Λ~;)	(^~°)	(>_<")	(. ° -)
(-_-#)	(-_-)	_(. _)_	(^ □ ^)	(^- ^)
(^-`)	(^ω`)	(. _ . ?)	(. ° .)	o(T□T)o
Σ(^□^;)	°.°(>_<).°.°	_)♪♪♪	(^-*)IΛ	(-☆)ヲリ
(.°*)\^子	(^-^>了解	[壁]_)ヲッ	(~~)ΛE~	(;_~)アツイ
(-彡 3'ゴ'う	(;_~)=3 ㄥ	{{(>_<)}}サムイ	Σ(^°°;)+二!!	(^▽^)]モヤシ
彡(*^~^*)ヲヲ-	(≥▽≤)/ HVA	φ(. .)ヲヲヲ♪	(.°.°)ノ° 井°イ	ヲヲ-ウ(-_-)ノノ
o(^-^o)☆!!'ヲ	d (>◇<) アウト!	__(-_-)_セ-フ!	(>_<)(>_<)仲-	\(o~▽~o)ll-I
(^-;);彡(-_-;)オ	(^-~) ヲ? ヲ?	<("0")> ナテコツタ!	凸v(^-^ ㄥ口!!)	(. _ . ,彡(^-^))ヨヨヨ

Greek characters Entry procedure (see p.237)

Α Β Γ Δ Ε Ζ Η Θ Ι Κ Λ Μ Ν Ξ Ο Π Ρ Σ Τ Υ Φ Χ Ψ Ω
α β γ δ ε ζ η θ ι κ λ μ ν ξ ο π ρ σ τ υ φ χ ψ ω

Russian characters Entry procedure (see p.237)

А Б В Г Д Е Ё Ж З И Й К Л М Н О П Р С Т У Ф Х Ц Ч
Ш Щ Ъ Ы Ь Э Ю Я а б в г д е ё ж з и й к л м н о п
р с т у ф х ц ч ш щ ъ ы ь э ю я

Common Phrase List

No.	Common Phrase	No.	Common Phrase
一般 General			
01	おはよう	11	の件、よろしくお願ひ致します。
02	おやすみ	12	今日、一杯どうですか？連絡下さい。
03	おはよー！今日も一日がんばりましょう。	13	FAX確認願ひます。
04	昨日は、とっても楽しかったです。どうもありがとう。	14	次の指示を待て。
05	連絡下さい。	15	変更します。
06	今から電話してもいいですか？	16	延期します。
07	ごめんなさい、遅れます。	17	中止します。
08	今日は 日です。早く帰って来てね。	18	での写真送ります。
09	まで迎えに来て！願ひします。	19	今わかりません。
10	について知っている人は までに 教えて下さい。	20	あとで連絡します。
応答 Answer			
11	もう少し待ってて！	01	Thank you!
12	いってらっしゃい。	02	Good!
13	留守電にメッセージを願ひします。	03	OKです。
14	で待ってます。	04	NGです。
15	たゞいま電話にできることができません。メールでご用件をお知らせ下さい。	05	いいよ。
16	集合時間は、集合場所は です。	06	行きます。
17	今日は外で食べて帰ります。ご飯はいりません。	07	了解。
18	メールありがとう。	08	ダメ！
19	の写真送ります。	09	ごめんネ...
20	最近の 写真です。	10	スミマセン、無理です。
遊び Play			
01	今なにしてるの？電話かメールを下さい。	11	本当？
02	どこか、遊びに行こーよ！	12	おまかせっ！！
03	電話ちょうだい！電話番号は です。	13	関係ないね！
04	おくれちゃう、ゴメン！	14	うらやましー。
05	どこにいるの？	15	お疲れさま。
06	集合！	16	反対。
07	時間だよーん！！	17	賛成。
08	トラブル発生！！	18	待ってました！！
09	会いたい！！	19	それは残念。
10	大好き！	20	写真届きました。
その他 Others			
11	みんなで飲みませんか？ に。	01	またねー！
12	今日 に、へ行きますか？	02	今どこ？
13	の待ち合わせ時間と場所、決めようよ。	03	お誕生日おめでとう。
14	に行かない？	04	おめでとう。
15	のメンバー募集！詳しくは まで連絡下さい。	05	まじでー！？
16	今度みんなで へ行きますよ。 までで、都合の良い日を教えて下さい。	06	まかせなさい！！
17	今度みんなで へ行きますよ。いいところがありましたら、お知らせ下さい。	07	キャンセル。
18	しませんか？日時：、場所：。出欠をご連絡下さい。	08	いってきます。
19	メッセージ下さい！！	09	頑張って！
20	の時の写真だよ。	10	ありがとう！
ビジネス Business			
01	本日の 会議は、 となりました。	11	http://
02	本日の 訪問は、 となりました。	12	http://www.
03	へ直行します。	13	.ne.jp
04	へ直帰します。	14	.co.jp
05	電車遅延のため、遅れます。	15	.or.jp
06	至急TEL下さい。	16	.ac.jp
07	予定変更！TEL下さい。	17	.net
08	待ち合わせ変更！場所：、時間：	18	.com
09	頃まで、携帯電話の電源を切ります。	19	.org
10	振込口座： 銀行 支店、口座番号、名義人名 です。	20	@docomo.ne.jp

Combination during Multiaccess

Operation to be generated or performed	Voice call		Videophone call		i-mode	i-mode mail		Short Message (SMS)	
	Dialing	Receiving	Dialing	Receiving		Sending	Receiving	Sending	Receiving
Current status									
During a voice call			x						
During a voice call + voice call on hold	x	x*	x	x*					
During a videophone call	x		x		x	x	x	x	
During i-mode communication				x*					
During packet communication with connection to PC (PPP packet communication)			x	x*	x	x	x		
During 64K data communication	x	x*	x	x*	x	x	x	x	
During voice call + i-mode communication			x	x*					
During voice call + PPP packet communication			x	x*	x	x	x		
During voice call + voice call on hold + i-mode communication	x	x*	x	x*					
During voice call + voice call on hold + PPP packet communication	x	x*	x	x*	x	x	x		

Operation to be generated or performed	PPP packet communication		64K data communication	
	Sending	Receiving	Sending	Receiving
Current status				
During a voice call			x	x*
During a voice call + voice call on hold			x	x*
During a videophone call	x	x	x	x*
During i-mode communication	x	x	x	x*
During packet communication with connection to PC (PPP packet communication)	x	x	x	x*
During 64K data communication	x	x	x	x*
During voice call + i-mode communication	x	x	x	x*
During voice call + PPP packet communication	x	x	x	x*
During voice call + voice call on hold + i-mode communication	x	x	x	x*
During voice call + voice call on hold + PPP packet communication	x	x	x	x*

: Possible

: Answering is possible upon completion of the current communication.

: If you subscribe to Call Waiting Service, answering or dialing is possible after putting the current communication on hold.

x: Not possible

: Displaying a prompt asking whether to end the current communication (By selecting “はい”, the current communication ends and dialing is performed.)

: Displaying a prompt asking whether to end the current communication (By selecting “はい”, the current communication ends and connection is made.)

* A call cannot be received but is recorded in Call History.

Combination during Multitask

Function currently being executed \ Function executed later	Voice call (dialing)	Voice call (receiving)	Videophone call (dialing)	Videophone call (receiving)	Switching to the mail reception screen	Receiving mail	Displaying/editing mail	Displaying site screen memo/Message R/F	Schedule Entry	Phonebook Entry	Phonebook Search	Redial Data/Call History	i- ppi list	Run i- ppi	Camera still image and video processing	Multimedia	Setting menu operation	Network services	Alarm setting	Software Update	Memory Stick Duo	Infrared communication	PPP packet communication	64K data communication	
Voice call		*											x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	*	
Videophone call					x		x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x		
Receiving mail	x		x	x									x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Displaying/editing mail													x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x		
Site connection (during i-mode)				x									x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Displaying site/screen memo/Message R/F													x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x		
Schedule Entry													x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x		
Phonebook Entry													x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x		
Phonebook Search													x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x		
Run i- ppi													x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x		
Camera													x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x		
Multimedia (🚫 invalid)	x		x										x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x		
Multimedia (🟢 valid)													x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x		
Setting menu operation													x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x		
Network services													x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x		
Alarm setting													x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x		
Software Update	x		x	-	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Memory Stick Duo													x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x		
Infrared communication	x	-	x	-	-	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Packet communication with connection to PC (PPP packet communication)			*				x		x				x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	*	
64K data communication							x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x		









- : Both functions can execute at the same time by switching the screens (Multitask).
- : The function generated later can execute. However, the current function cannot be used until the function generated ends.
- : Whether the current function continues executing or the function generated later executes can be selected.
- : The current function ends and the function generated later executes.
- : The function can be executed upon completion of the current operation.
- : If you subscribe to Call Waiting Service, you can put on hold the first call to make or receive another voice call.
- x : The function cannot be executed.
- : The combination is not available.


* See *Combination during Multiaccess* in p.265.



Note1: The above table shows typical combinations. Certain functions may not be executed depending on the operation being performed even if they are indicated with , , , or . Some of the functions indicated with , , or may end when another functions is executed, if the list or display screen that does not lose data after the function ends is displayed.

Note2: ■ indicates the function that cannot be executed by 🚫 .

Something Wrong? First Check for Problems

Problem	Checks and remedies
Nothing appears in the Inspiration window.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Is Power Saver of the Inspiration window set to nondisplay mode? If FOMA terminal is closed and about 1 minute elapses without any action, the display in the screen disappears (see p.150).
“オールロック中のため使用できません (Cannot operate while All Lock is set)” appears.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> You cannot operate while All Lock is set. Cancel All Lock (see p.167).
“圏外 (Outside area)” indicator appears and you hear a busy signal.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Are you outside the service area? Or, are you in an area with poor signal strength? (see p.28)
Neither “圏外 (Outside area)” nor  appears, and the call cannot be made or is quickly disconnected.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> This problem may occur when you are at the edge of a service area. It is not a failure of the FOMA terminal. Move to a location where signal conditions are better and  is indicated.
Camera image is out of focus.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Is the Closeup switch set correctly? Set the switch to  (Normal) for normal photography. Is the lens clean?
“このカードは認識できません (This card is not recognized correctly)” appears.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Is the FOMA Card connected correctly or damaged? (see p.34) Is the FOMA Card unusable?
“しばらくお待ち下さい (Please wait)” appears and you hear a busy signal.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The line is busy. Wait for a while and try again later.
Battery cannot be recharged.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Is the battery pack connected correctly? (see p.38) Is the AC adapter connected correctly? (see p.40, 41)  displayed on the screen while recharging indicates a recharging error (see p.43). Check the battery pack and AC adapter connections, etc.  displayed on the screen while recharging indicates the ambient temperature is outside the acceptable range. Move the FOMA terminal to a place where the ambient temperature is between 5°C and 35°C (see p.43). If  or  remains on the screen even after performing the above procedures, contact an NTT DoCoMo service center (see p.270). Check whether the protective connector cap is properly closed when charging the FOMA terminal in the desktop holder.
“セルフモード設定中 (Self Mode is set)” appears.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> You cannot make or receive calls while Self Mode is set. And, i-mode communication, infrared communication or network service settings cannot be performed. Cancel Self Mode (see p.171).
After dialing a number, you hear a busy signal and cannot establish your call.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Did you dial the area code? (see p.48) Is the “圏外 (Outside area)” indicator displayed? (see p.28)
Calls cannot be made by using numeric keys.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Is Keydial Lock set? (see p.169) Is All Lock set? (see p.167)
Ringtone does not change after setting a new tone.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Settings are made for ringtones of higher priority than the general ringtone. Ringtones are heard in the following order of precedence: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Hidden-ID tone, no-ID tone, payphone tone (see p.138) Group setting ringtone (when Caller ID is notified) (see p.101) Ringtone
Melody set as a ringtone or alarm tone is not played.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> In the Sound setting (see p.138),  (corrupted red note) before the melody name indicates that the melody is corrupted. (Pattern 1 sounds.)

Problem	Checks and remedies
Calls cannot be received.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Is the power turned on? • Is the “圏外 (Outside area)” indicator displayed? • Is Self Mode set? (see p.171) • Is Drive Mode set? (see p.62) • Is the terminal during infrared communication? • Is Record Message Shift Time set to 0 second? (see p.66) • Is the ring time of Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service set to 0 second and the service activated? (see p.204, 210)
It is informed that software needs to be updated in the NTT DoCoMo web site and “お知らせ&ヘルプ (News&Help)” in iMenu.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Software needs to be updated. Update software (see p.272).
“副画像を保存できませんでした (Failed to save sub-images)” appears.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • There is not enough space in the Multimedia. Delete the data that are no longer needed and try again.
Edited contents cannot be saved.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When a call arrives while editing a phonebook entry or a mail item, press (END) to end the call and return to the edit screen. You can continue editing. • If you press (END) in the edit screen, “終了しますか? (End?)” appears. If “はい (Yes)” is selected, the edited contents are not saved. Select “いいえ (No)” to return to the edit screen, and save an entry or an item.
The screen on the right appears.	 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The temperature of the FOMA terminal is high. Wait till the temperature falls (see p.42).
Display of the main display and the Inspiration window disappears and turns white.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • This problem may occur when the main display is exposed to intense light such as strobe light. It is not failure of the FOMA terminal. In such a case, close and open the FOMA terminal to return to the previous screen.
Mail ringtone does not change after setting a new tone.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Is the mail ringtone set in the Group setting? (see p.101) (For mail received from a party saved in Phonebook, the mail ringtone set in the Group setting takes priority over the mail ringtone set in the Sound setting.)
Data cannot be saved in <i>Memory Stick Duo</i> .	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Can you display the contents of <i>Memory Stick Duo</i>? (see “Application” p.289) If not, please follow the instructions in “Contents of <i>Memory Stick Duo</i> cannot be displayed”. • Is there enough free space in your <i>Memory Stick Duo</i>? (see “Application” p.289) If not, please delete the items that are no longer needed (see “Application” p.298). • Is the write-protect tab locked (when you use an off-the-shelf <i>Memory Stick Duo</i>)? • Is the maximum number of saved items is reached inside the folder? (see “Application” p.282) If the maximum number of saved items is reached, delete the items that are no longer needed, or move the data to another folder (see “Application” p.298). • If the problem is not solved even after checking the above, contact an NTT DoCoMo service center (see p.270).

Problem	Checks and remedies
Contents of <i>Memory Stick Duo</i> cannot be displayed.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Is <i>Memory Stick Duo</i> connected correctly? (see "Application" p.281) • Is the capacity of <i>Memory Stick Duo</i> acceptable for D900i? (see "Application" p.280) • Did you format <i>Memory Stick Duo</i> by other than the FOMA terminal? (see "Application" p.280, 300) • Was the folder deleted on a different device such as your PC? (see "Application" p.303) • If the problem is not solved even after checking the above, contact an NTT DoCoMo service center (see p.270).
“メモリ不足のため現在この機能は使用できません (Unable to use this function now due to insufficient memory)” appears.	There is not enough memory to execute the function. Please reperform it after ending the function under execution.
Melody is not played.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Is Manner Mode (see p.118) or Drive Mode (see p.62) set? • Is the sound level set to level 0? (see p.136) •  (corrupted red note) in mail or Message R/F indicates that the melody is corrupted.
“FOMAカードを挿入して下さい (Connect the FOMA Card)” appears.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Is the FOMA Card connected correctly or damaged? (see p.34)
FOMA terminal cannot be turned on (FOMA terminal cannot be used).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Is the battery pack connected correctly? (see p.38) • Is the remaining battery power sufficient? (see p.39) • Did you press and hold down  ? (see p.42)

Warranty and After Sales Service

About the warranty

- A written warranty is provided upon purchase of the FOMA terminal. After confirming the contents of the guarantee as well as the name of the shop and date of purchase, keep it in a safe place. If necessary items are not filled out, contact the shop where you purchased the FOMA terminal. The period of guarantee is for one year from the date of purchase.
- Since components that generate electro-magnetism are used in the earpiece of the FOMA terminal, do not allow cash cards or similar that are vulnerable to magnetism near the FOMA terminal. The magnetically stored data may be cleared.
- The specifications of this product and accessories are subject to change without notice.

After sales service

If you experience problems with your FOMA terminal

Before asking for repairs, see *Something Wrong? First Check for Problems* in p.267.

If the problem remains unsolved, contact one of the numbers below or visit an NTT DoCoMo service center:

- DoCoMo Group

For technical inquiries (in Japanese only)

No prefix 113(toll free)

*Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSs

* Please confirm the phone number before you dial.

For details, please refer to the list of service centers supplied with your FOMA terminal.



0120-800-000 (toll free)

*Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs

Note: **When the result of an inquiry indicates that a repair is required**

Take your FOMA terminal to an authorized NTT DoCoMo service center within office hours.

Note that you must present your warranty to qualify for warranty service.

Within the guarantee coverage

The FOMA terminal is repaired in accordance with the warranty.

- If you request repair of your FOMA terminal, always bring your warranty card. Even during the warranty period, you will be charged repair fees if you do not present your warranty card or the failure or damage is caused by incorrect customer handling.
- Repairs of damages resulting from use of devices or consumables other than those designated by DoCoMo will be charged even during the warranty period.

Repair may not be performed in the following cases

Please be advised that if the watertight seal is breached, if corrosion is found as a result of testing due to water leaks, condensation, sweat, or the inside board is damaged or deformed, it may not be possible to repair the FOMA terminal. If the FOMA terminal can be repaired, the repairs are not covered under the warranty and you will be charged.

After expiration of the warranty

We repair the FOMA terminal upon request if it can be fixed. Charges apply.

Spare parts availability

Replacement parts will be kept in stock for at least 6 years after termination of production. The FOMA terminal can be repaired during this period. Even if 6 years have passed, call one of the phone numbers listed above to ask if the FOMA terminal can still be repaired.

Notes

- Do not modify the FOMA terminal or its accessories.
 - Fire, injury or damage may result.
 - In order to prevent interference of radio waves or network breakdown, mobile phones are manufactured according to technical standards stipulated by law. Mobile phones that do not satisfy these standards cannot be used.
 - If the FOMA terminal is modified (part replacement, modification, painting, etc.), it is repaired only after the modified parts have been returned to the condition at the time of purchase. However, repair may be refused depending on the condition of the modification.
 - If failure or damage is caused by modification, repair of the FOMA terminal is charged even in the guarantee coverage period.
- Do not remove the inscription stickers attached to the FOMA terminal. The inscription stickers certify that the FOMA terminal satisfies specific technical standards. Note that if stickers are removed intentionally or are reattached in such a way that confirmation of the sticker's contents is impossible, repair or servicing may be refused because confirmation of whether or not the FOMA terminal conforms to relevant technical standards cannot be made.
- The function settings and stored data, such as the total call charge, may be reset or cleared if the FOMA terminal fails, or during repair work or for other reasons. In this case, the functions must be set again.
- If your FOMA terminal gets wet or is exposed to moisture, turn off the power immediately, remove the battery pack, and bring your FOMA terminal to an authorized NTT DoCoMo service center as soon as possible. Depending on your FOMA terminal's condition, however, repair may not be performed.

About memory dial (Phonebook function), downloaded information, and others

- Data stored in your FOMA terminal such as memory dial, are liable to be modified or deleted if the FOMA terminal fails, or during repair work or for other reasons. Please keep a separate record of any important data. And, when the FOMA terminal is repaired, due to copyright law restrictions, information downloaded using i-mode before repair is not transferred to another mobile phone.
- Data entered, imported or downloaded by customer may be changed or deleted by model change or a repair of the FOMA terminal.

A repair, at NTT DoCoMo's option, may include the replacement with a new terminal and in such an event it may not be possible to transfer data to the new terminal. NTT DoCoMo accept no responsibility for this.

Updating the FOMA Terminal's Software

This function is used for checking whether FOMA terminal software needs to be updated, for downloading a part of software by packet communication* if necessary, and for updating software.

* Packet communication for updating software is free of charge.

If software needs to be updated, it is informed at the NTT DoCoMo web site and “お知らせ & ヘルプ (News&Help)” in iMenu.

There are two ways to update software, to update immediately and automatically at the reserved date and time.

- You can update software even when i-mode host is set to the user defined host.
- Before updating software, fully charge the battery.
- In the following cases, software cannot be updated:
 - When the date and time are not set
 - When outside the service area
 - When battery is too low
 - During a call
 - When FOMA Card is not set
 - When failed in reading the FOMA Card
 - While All Lock is set
 - While PIM Lock is set
 - While Self Mode is set
 - While receiving mail or Message R/F
 - During data communication by connecting to a PC
- There may be a delay in updating (downloading or rewriting) software.
- During Software Update, you cannot use other functions (excluding receiving voice calls).
- When software is updated, SSL communication is performed to the server (NTT DoCoMo site). You need to set CA Certificate to “有効”. (“有効” is set by default. For details about setting, see “Application” p.53).
- It is recommended that you update software at a location where signal conditions are good and the signal strength indicator is **Full**, without moving.


[Immediate Update]

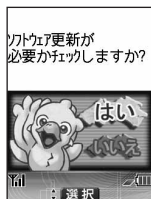
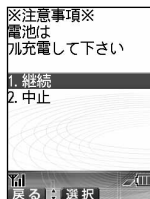
Updating software immediately

1 In standby, select “設定” “プライバシー” “ソフトウェア更新” from Menu


2 Enter your terminal ID number and press  (選択).


The notice appears.

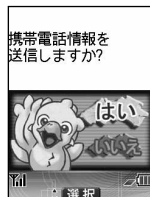
3 Select “1. 継続” and press  (選択).



A prompt appears.

- To cancel the operation, select “2. 中止”.
- If the Battery Level icon is other than , select “2. 中止” and recharge the battery and retry the operation.

4 Select “はい” and press  (選択).




A prompt appears.




- To cancel the operation, select “いいえ”.

5 Select “はい” and press (選択).

Mobile phone information (the model of the FOMA terminal, manufacturer serial number, and other information) is sent to the server for checking whether updating software is needed or not. Customer's mobile phone information sent to NTT DoCoMo is not made public and not used for other purposes.




- Normally, “更新は必要ありません このままご利用下さい (No update is needed, please continue to use as before)” appears. Please continue to use as before. When an update is needed, “更新が必要です 更新しますか? (Update is needed, update?)” appears.
- To cancel the operation, select “はい” and press .

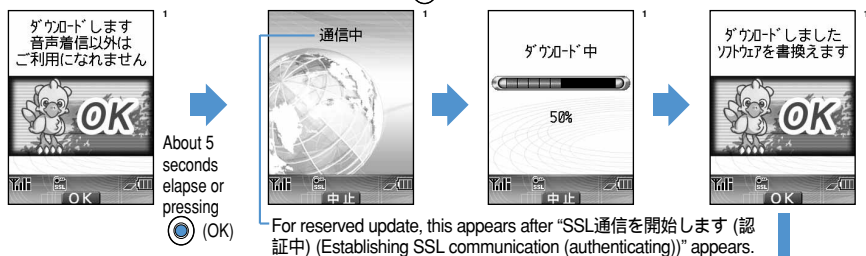


- Pressing  (中止) while  appears, a prompt appears asking whether to end the operation. To end the operation, select “はい” and press .

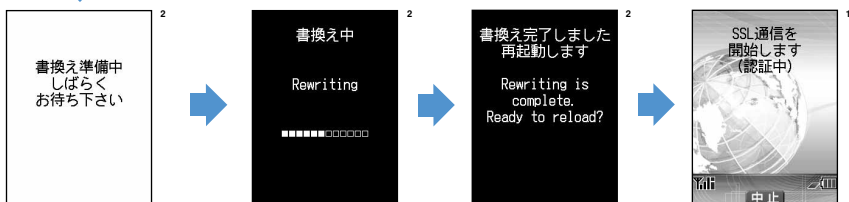
6 Select “1.今すぐ更新” and press (選択).

“ダウンロードします 音声着信以外はご利用になれません (Ready to download? Cannot use FOMA terminal, excluding receiving voice calls)” appears. Once download is started, software is updated automatically.

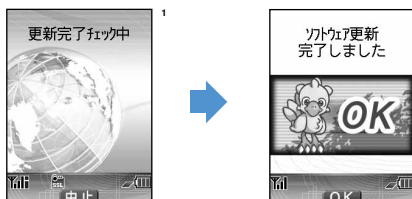
- To cancel the operation, select “3.更新しない”.
- Pressing  (中止) while  appears, a prompt appears asking whether to end the operation. To end the operation, select “はい” and press .





About 5 seconds elapse or pressing  (OK)



Power automatically turns off and turns on right away in about 5 seconds




- 1 To cancel, press . When a prompt appears, select “はい” and press .
- 2 All key operations are invalid. The update cannot be canceled.

If “通信中 (Communicate)” appears, followed by “サーバーが混みあっています 予約しますか? (Server is busy, reserve?)”





① Select “はい” and press  (選択).

- Repeat from Step 3 in *Updating software by reserving a date and time* (see p.275)
- If you do not want to reserve, select “いいえ”. A prompt appears asking whether to end the operation. To end the operation, select “はい” and press  (選択).

7 Press  (OK).

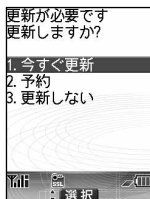
Note

- When a voice call comes while you execute Steps 2 - 7, you can answer the call unless “書換え準備中しばらくお待ち下さい (Preparing for rewriting, please wait)”, “書換え中 (Rewriting)”, or “書換え完了しました再起動します (Rewriting is completed, restart)” appears. While receiving a call, you can select a handling method from the submenu or set Record Message to answer the call. When you finish the call, the screen is returned to the previous screen. When rewriting is complete, if you receive a call from a caller not saved in Phonebook, a prompt asking whether to save the caller in Phonebook does not appear. During a call, you cannot use certain functions such as Phonebook Search, Call History, or Redial.
- You cannot receive a videophone call, mail, or Message R/F during Software Update. Mail and Message R/F are stored in the i-mode center. When a message such as “ソフトウェア更新完了しました (Your update is complete)” indicating that Software Update has ended is displayed, you can receive a videophone call, mail, or Message R/F.
- If  or  indicating that mail or Message R/F is stored in the i-mode center is displayed together with the mail icon or Message R/F icon before restart after rewriting, it disappears when restarted during Software Update. In this case, mail and Message R/F stored in the i-mode center remain.
- While Software Update is performing, do not remove the battery pack. Removing the battery may result in an update failure. When update failed, “書換え失敗しました (Failed in rewriting)” appears and all you can do is turning the power on and off. In such a case, contact an authorized NTT DoCoMo service center.
- If you cancel download in the middle, the data downloaded until then is deleted.

[Reserved Update]

Updating software by reserved date and time



1 Display a screen for selecting an update method.



- Follow Steps 1 - 5 in *Updating software immediately* (see p.272)


2 Select “2. 予約” and press (選択).

The updating date and time selection screen appears.

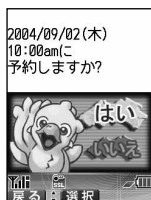
- To cancel the operation, select “3. 更新しない”.
- Pressing  (中止) while **中止** appears, a prompt appears asking whether to end the operation. To end the operation, select “はい” and press  (選択).



The server time appears. If the 24-hour system is set in the Standby Screen setting, the time appears in the 24-hour system.


Select to cancel the operation. When a prompt appears, select “はい” and press  (選択). Item numbers vary by the number of displayed date and time.

3 Select an updating date and time and press (選択).



A prompt appears.

To update at a date and time other than the displayed one


- ① Select “その他の日時” and press  (選択).

A confirmation screen for selecting date and time appears.

- Item numbers vary by the number of displayed date and time.



- ② Press  (OK).

- ③ Select a date of updating and press  (選択).

- ④ Select an updating time slot and press  (選択).

The updating date and time selection screen reappears. The date and time selected in Steps

- ③ - ④ appears.

- In the time slot list, available dates and times appear with symbols. Pressing  (説明), description of the symbols appear. Check the description and press  (OK).




- ⑤ Select an updating date and time and press  (選択).

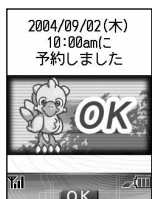
A prompt appears.

- Proceed to Step 4.

4 Select “はい” and press (選択).

The selected date and time is reserved.

- To cancel the operation, select “いいえ”.
- Press  (中止) while **中止** appears, a prompt appears asking whether to end the operation. To end the operation, select “はい” and press  (選択). (Depending on the timing of pressing  (選択), it may not be canceled.)



5 Press (OK).

Checking, changing and canceling a reserved updating date and time

1 In standby, select “設定” “プライバシー” “ソフトウェア更新” from Menu.

2 Enter your terminal ID number and press (選択).



The reserved updating date and time appears.

To change the updating date and time

① Select “1.変更” and press (選択).

A prompt appears asking whether to send mobile phone information.

② Select “はい” and press (選択).

A confirmation screen for selecting date and time appears.



- To cancel the operation, select “いいえ”.

③ Press (OK).

④ Select an updating date and press (選択).

⑤ Select an updating time slot and press (選択).

The updating date and time selection screen appears. The date and time selected in Steps ④ - ⑤ appear.

- In the time slot list, available dates and times appear with symbols. Pressing  (説明) displays description of the symbols. Check the description and press  (OK).

⑥ Select an updating date and time and press (選択).

A prompt appears.

- Repeat from Step 4 in *Updating software by reserved date and time* (see p.275).

To cancel the reserved updating date and time

① Select “2.取消” and press (選択).

A prompt appears.

② Select “はい” and press (選択).

A prompt appears asking whether to send mobile phone information.

- To cancel the operation, select “いいえ”.

③ Select “はい” and press (選択).

The reservation is canceled.

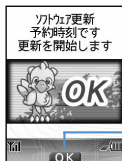
- To cancel the operation, select “いいえ”.

④ Press (OK).


To end the operation

① Select “3.終了” and press (選択).

When reserved date and time of Software Update has come



The FOMA terminal needs to be recharged fully and display the Standby screen at a location with good signal conditions before the reserved date and time of Software Update. At the reserved date and time, the screen on the left appears and software is updated automatically. Repeat from Step 6 in *Updating software immediately* (see p.273).

In about 5 seconds or pressing  (OK), Software Update automatically starts.

- If the Standby screen is not displayed at the reserved date and time, the above screen appears after returning to the Standby screen.
- Even if you return to the Standby screen after the reserved date and time, software may not be updated.
- If an alarm time or another function is set to the same date and time as the reserved date and time, Software Update starts after the alarm finishes sounding.
- The reservation will be disabled, if the battery of the FOMA terminal is exhausted at the reserved date and time of Software Update, or if you turn off the power of the FOMA terminal after the reserved date and time.

Note

- When you receive a voice call while you are performing Steps 1 - 4 in *Reserved Update* or Step 2 in *Checking, changing and canceling a reserved updating date and time*, you can answer the call. While receiving a call, you can select a handling method from the submenu or set Record Message to answer the call. When you finish the call, the previous screen reappears. When rewriting is complete, if you receive a call from a caller not saved in Phonebook, a prompt asking whether to save the caller in Phonebook does not appear. During a call, you cannot use certain functions such as Phonebook Search, Call History, or Redial. You cannot receive mail or Message R/F during Software Update. Mail and Message R/F are stored in the i-mode center.
- During Software Update, you cannot receive a videophone call, mail, or Message R/F. Mail and Message R/F are stored in the i-mode center. When a message such as “ソフトウェア更新完了しました (Your update is complete)” indicating that Software Update has ended is displayed, you can receive a videophone call, mail, or Message R/F.

A

- AC adapter40
- Accept Calls125
- Action Input84
- Action List85
- Additional Service227
- Adjust Contrast156
- Adjust Self Image.....81
- Adjust Videophone Image82
- Adjust Volume136
- After sales service270
- Alarm Time174
- Alarm tone142
- All Lock167
- Alternate Image setting87
- Answer Hold62
- Antenna25
- Any Key Answer setting131
- Assist Partner setting160
- Auto Answer setting191
- Auto Power Off174
- Auto Power On173
- Auto Redial by Voice setting ...89
- AV connector25

B

- Back Display setting149
- Battery38
- Battery Level.....43

C

- Call
 - Making48
 - Receiving56
- Call Forwarding Service208
- Call History58
 - Deleting items60
- Call Hold
 - Videophone call79
 - Voice call49
- Call Reception during Talking
 - setting225
- Call Recovery Alarm130
- Call Waiting Service213
- Caller ID Display Request Service
 -219
- Caller ID Notification Service ...217
- Caller ID-based Call Block ...128
- Caller Information setting151
- Camera24
- Chaku-motion.....140
- Change Image Size.....91
- Change PIN1 Code163

- Change PIN2 Code163
- Character assignment table
 - 2-press Method261
 - 5-press Method260
- Character entry230
 - Change double-byte/single-byte
 -233
 - Change uppercase/lowercase
 -233
 - Copying246
 - Correcting234
 - Cutting246
 - Pasting247
 - Select Input Method251
- Character Size setting252
- Chara-den78
- Dial Sending84
 - Mode Switching84
 - Operating84
 - Switching83
- Charging Sound.....143
- Check Storage status111
- Clear/- ppli Standby screen key
 -24
- Clock setting45
- Close Operation setting133
- Closeup switch25
- Column Search108
- Common Phrase
 - Editing/Saving244
 - Entering239
 - List264
- Compact light25
- Components and functions ...24
- Confirm Settings185
- Connecting earphone/
 - microphone jack25
- Copy
 - Mail text247
 - Phonebook241
 - Phonebook entries116
 - Text246
- Cut text246

D

- DC adapter41
- Display28
- Display Light setting157
- Display Size setting159
- Drive Mode62
- Dual Network Service221

E

- Earphone/microphone jack ...25

- Earpiece24
- Earpiece Volume60
- Easy Selector Plus24
 - How to use27
- Emoticons
 - Entering241
 - List263
- English Announcement Service
 -222
- Enlarge Image83
- Enter alphabetic characters ...232
- Enter double-byte Kanji characters
 -234
- Enter Hiragana characters ...234
- Enter Katakana characters
 - Double-byte Katakana234
 - Single-byte Katakana239
- Enter numeric characters232
- Enter PIN1 code164
- Explanation for the icon menu ...32

F

- Features8
- FOMA Card34
 - Copying phonebook entries
 -116
 - Group Search.....110
 - ID codes35
 - Inserting/Removing34
 - Saving entries in FOMA Card
 - Phonebook99
 - Security function36
 - Version37

G

- Group Search (FOMA Card) ...110
- Group Search (FOMA terminal)
 -109
- Group setting101

H

- Help Function192
- Hidden-ID tone142
- Hold
 - Answer Hold62
 - Call Hold (videophone call) ...79
 - Call Hold (voice call)49
- Hold Tone setting132
- Hole for attaching handstrap ...25

I

- Icons28
- ID codes161
- Image Display setting90

- Image Quality setting91
i-mode password161
In-call Voice Memo
 Playing back/Deleting70
 Recording184
Infrared port24
Inspiration window25
 Setting149
 Viewing30
International call54
- J**
- Jump Menu182
- K**
- Key Guard172
Keydial Lock169
Keypad Sound143
- L**
- Lock functions166
Log Display setting170
- M**
- Mail key24
Mail ringtone141
Mail tone time141
Main display24
Manner Mode118
Manner Mode Selection119
Melody list139
Memory No. Search108
Memory Stick Duo port25
Menu31
 Menu list254
 Submenu33
Message F ringtone141
Message F tone time141
Message R ringtone141
Message R tone time141
Microphone24
Missed Call64
Multiaccess194
 Combination265
Multitask197
 Active list198
 Combination266
Mute Ring Time setting124
- N**
- Natural Color Matrix159
Network ID number161
No-ID tone138
Noise Reduction130
Nuisance Call Blocking Service
 216
Numeric keys24
- O**
- One-press Dialing115
Optional products22
Own Number
 Confirming44
 Saving181
- P**
- Partner setting153
Paste text247
Pause Function53
Payphone tone142
Phone No. Search109
Phonebook92
 Check Storage Status111
 Confirming saved contents 111
 Deleting entries113
 Editing entries112
 Saving (copy phonebook
 entries)116
 Saving in FOMA Card99
 Saving in FOMA terminal ...94
 Search106
Photo Call setting148
Pictographs
 Entering241
 List262
PIM Lock168
 Setting168
PIN codes161
 Setting162
PIN Lock canceling165
PIN1 Entry ON/OFF setting ...162
Playing Back/Deleting Voice
 Memos70
 PLMN setting188
 Power on/End key24
 Power On/Off42
 Power Saver150
 Predictive Conversion238
 Reset Conversion list238
 Set Predictive Conversion ..238
Prefix setting129
Protective cap25
- Q**
- Quality Alarm131
Quick entry of mail addresses
 242
Quick Record Message69
- R**
- Reading Search106
Rear cover25
Rear key25
 Main operations26
Recharging39
Record Function while Dialing
 184
Record Message65
 Playing back/Deleting70
Redial50
 Delete Redial Data51
Reject Calls126
Reject Unstored Number127
Remote Operation setting ..226
Reset Settings185
Reset Total Call Time135
Restrictions setting169
Ring Volume61
Ringtone140
- S**
- Save New Word249
Schedule
 Deleting180
 Saving177
Second Call Handling224
Secret Search114
Select Answer Hold Screen ...89
Select Call Hold Screen90
Select Dial Sending84
Select Earphone/Speaker ...188
Select Record Message Screen
 90
Select Sent Image78
Select Side Key Act185
Self Mode171
Send Self Image86
Service Dial223
Services available from FOMA
 193
Side keys25
 Main operations26
Software Update272
Sound setting138
Speaker25
Special characters list262
Standard accessories22
Standby Screen setting144
Standby Voice Memo
 Playing back/Deleting70
 Recording183
Start key24
Still Image Memo80
Subaddress setting129
Submenu33
Switch Actions84
Switch LCD83
Switch to Alternate Still Image 79
Switch-equipped Earphone/
 Microphone189

Symbols
 Entering239
 List262

T

Task key24
Terminal ID number161
 Changing.....162
Touch tones53
Troubleshooting267
Two-press Dialing115

U

Use Character Map Code
 Entering248
 List256
User data154

V

Vibrator121
Video Memo80
Videophone72
 Making73
 Receiving75
 Redialing74
Videophone Chaku-motion ...140
Videophone Record Message 65
 Playing back71
Videophone ringtone140
View Call Time135
Visual Partner.....153
Voice Mail Service.....203
Voice Memo Player70

W

Wake-up Display152
Warranty270
WORLD CALL54

Other

186/18452
2-press Method251
5-press Method232

Mobile phone etiquette

When using your FOMA terminal, always be considerate of your environment and those around you.

Turn the power off in the following situations

In prohibited areas

Use of mobile phones in the following places is prohibited. You must turn the power off.

- Airplanes
- Hospitals

You must also turn the power off when in lobbies or waiting rooms of hospitals as there could be people in such areas who could be adversely affected by mobile phone signals.

While driving

Do not use a mobile phone while driving. A momentary distraction could cause an accident. You can select Drive Mode when you do not want to turn the power off.

On crowded trains or in other areas where there could be a person with an implanted cardiac pacemaker or defibrillator

Operating a mobile phone could interfere with implanted cardiac pacemakers or defibrillators.

When visiting live events, movie theaters, museums or other public spaces

The ringing of your phone and your telephone conversations could disturb others around you in quiet public spaces.

Be considerate of your location and those around you with respect to the volume of your speaking voice and your FOMA terminal's ringtone

When using a mobile phone in a restaurant, hotel lobby or other quiet place, always remember to lower your voice.

When using a mobile phone on the street, find a place that does not interfere with passing traffic.

Follow manners when using the camera

Be careful not to violate the copyright and the right of portrait. Do not use the copyright material or the image of other persons without permission.

Do not use the camera in the place where photography is prohibited.

Functions convenient for public etiquette

You may select a mode to reject incoming calls, turn off all sounds generated by your FOMA terminal, or choose some other mode to keep from disturbing those around you.

• **Manner Mode/Manner Mode Selection** [see p.118, 119]

Keypad sound, ringtone and other sounds generated by the FOMA terminal are turned off (Manner Mode). When taking still images or video clips, however, you cannot turn off the shutter sound and auto timer sound (in the Manner mode). You may activate the Record Message function or change the Vibrator and Ring Volume settings for Manner Mode (Manner Mode Selection).

• **Drive Mode** [see p.62]

When a call is received while driving, an announcement informs the caller that you cannot answer the call because you are driving and the call is then terminated. Your driving concentration is not affected as the ringtones are silenced.

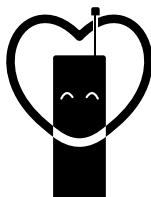
• **Vibrator** [see p.121]

When a call is received, the FOMA terminal vibrates instead of ringing.

• **Record Message** [see p.65]

When you cannot answer a voice or videophone call, the caller can leave a brief voice or video memo.

You may also use optional services such as Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service.



Do not forget your cellular phone
... or your manners!

When using your mobile phone in a public place, do not forget to show common courtesy
and consideration for others around you.

Sales: NTT DoCoMo Group

NTT DoCoMo Hokkaido, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Tohoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Tokai, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Hokuriku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Kansai, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Chugoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Shikoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Kyushu, Inc.

Manufacturer: MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION



Li-ion

To prevent damage to the environment, bring used battery packs to an NTT DoCoMo service center, an NTT DoCoMo agent or a recycle center.



Made from 100% recycled paper.



This manual is printed using an ink based on soy bean oil.



'04.5 1st edition